



DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY  
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS  
3000 MARINE CORPS PENTAGON  
WASHINGTON, DC 20350-3000

NAVMC 3500.61C  
C 466  
16 May 2018

NAVMC 3500.61C

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps  
To: Distribution List

Subj: MARINE CORPS SECURITY FORCE REGIMENT TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

Ref: (a) MCO P3500.72A  
(b) MCO 1553.3B  
(c) MCTP 8-10A  
(d) MCTP 8-10B  
(e) MCO 1553.2C

Encl: (1) MCSF Reg T&R Manual

1. Purpose. Per reference (a), the training and readiness (T&R) manual, contained in enclosure (1), establishes training standards, regulations, and policies regarding the training of Marines and assigned Navy personnel in the Marine Corps Security Force Regiment occupational field.

2. Cancellation. NAVMC 3500.61B.

3. Scope


a. Per reference (b), commanders will conduct an internal assessment of the unit's ability to execute its mission and develop long, mid, and short-range training plans to sustain proficiency and correct deficiencies. Training plans will incorporate these events to standardize training and provide objective assessment of progress toward attaining combat readiness. Commanders will keep records at the unit and individual levels to record training achievements, identify training gaps and document objective assessments of readiness associated with training Marines and assigned Navy personnel. References (c) and (d) provide amplifying information for effective planning and management of training within the unit.

b. Formal school and training detachment commanders will use references (a) and (e) to ensure programs of instruction meet skill training requirements established in this manual and provides career-progression training in the events designated for initial training in the formal school environment.

4. Information. Commanding General (CG), Training and Education Command (TECOM) will update this T&R Manual as necessary to provide current and relevant training standards to commanders. All questions pertaining to the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program and Unit Training Management should be directed to: CG, TECOM, Marine Air-Ground Task Force Training and Education Standards Division (C 466), 1019 Elliot Road, Quantico, Virginia 22134.

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

5. Command. This Manual is applicable to the Marine Corps Total Force.
6. Certification. Reviewed and approved this date.

  
K. M. IIAMS  
By direction

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10031978200

LOCATOR SHEET

Subj: MARINE CORPS SECURITY FORCE REGIMENT TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

Location: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Indicate location(s) of copy(ies) of this manual)

RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated.

Change Number	Date of Change	Date Entered	Signature of Person Incorporating Change

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER

1 . . . . . OVERVIEW

2 . . . . . MISSION-ESSENTIAL TASKS

3 . . . . . 8000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

4 . . . . . 7000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

5 . . . . . 6000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

6 . . . . . 5000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

7 . . . . . 4000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

8 . . . . . 3000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

9 . . . . . 2000 LEVEL INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

10. . . . . 1000 LEVEL INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

APPENDICES

A . . . . . ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

B . . . . . TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
INTRODUCTION. . . . .	1000	1-2
UNIT TRAINING . . . . .	1001	1-2
UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT. . . . .	1002	1-3
SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING. . . . .	1003	1-3
ORGANIZATION. . . . .	1004	1-3
T&R EVENT CODING. . . . .	1005	1-3
T&R EVENT COMPOSITION . . . . .	1006	1-5
COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP) . . . . .	1007	1-11
CRP CALCULATION . . . . .	1008	1-12
CHEMICAL BIOLOGICAL RADIOLOGICAL NUCLEAR TRAINING . . . . .	1009	1-13
NIGHT TRAINING. . . . .	1010	1-13
RISK MANAGEMENT (RM). . . . .	1011	1-13
IMPROVISED EXPLOSIVE TRAINING . . . . .	1012	1-14

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

**1000. INTRODUCTION**

1. The training and readiness (T&R) program is the Corps' primary tool for planning, conducting and evaluating training, and assessing training readiness. Subject matter experts (SME) from the operating forces (OPFOR) developed core capability mission essential task lists (METL) for ground communities derived from the Marine Corps task list. This T&R Manual is built around these METLs and other related Marine Corps tasks (MCT). All events contained in this Manual relate directly to these METLs and MCTs. This comprehensive T&R program will help to ensure the Marine Corps continues to improve its combat readiness by training more efficiently and effectively. Ultimately, this will enhance the Marine Corps' ability to accomplish real-world missions.

2. This T&R Manual contains the collective and individual training requirements to prepare units to accomplish their combat mission. This T&R Manual is not intended to be an encyclopedia that contains every minute detail of how to accomplish training. Instead, it identifies the minimum standards that Marines must be able to perform in combat. This T&R Manual is a fundamental tool for commanders to build and maintain unit combat readiness. Using this tool, leaders can construct and execute an effective training plan that supports the unit's METL. More detailed information on the Marine Corps ground T&R program is found in reference (a).

3. This T&R Manual is designed for use by unit commanders to determine pre-deployment training requirements in preparation for training and for formal schools and training detachments to create programs of instruction. This manual focuses on individual and collective tasks performed by OPFOR units and supervised by personnel in the performance of unit mission essential task(s) (MET).

**1001. UNIT TRAINING**

1. The training of Marines to perform as an integrated unit in combat lies at the heart of the T&R program. Unit and individual readiness are directly related. Individual training and the mastery of individual core skills serve as the building blocks for unit combat readiness. A Marine's ability to perform critical skills required in combat is essential.

2. Commanders will ensure that all training is focused on their combat mission. Unit training should focus on achieving proficiency in the unit METL. This T&R Manual is a tool to help develop the unit's training plan based on the unit METL, as approved by their higher commander and reported in the Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS). Training will support the unit METL and be designed to meet T&R standards. Commanders at all levels are responsible for effective combat training. The conduct of standards based training consistent with Marine Corps T&R standards cannot be over emphasized.

## **1002. UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT**

1. Effective unit training management (UTM) focuses the overall organization on development of training plans based on the unit METL and standards-based community T&R events. This is accomplished in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit in preparation for the conduct of its mission.

2. Unit training management techniques, described in reference (b), (c), and (d) provide commanders with the requisite tools and techniques to analyze, design, develop, implement, and evaluate the training of their unit. To maintain an efficient and effective training program, leaders at every level must understand and implement UTM.

## **1003. SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING**

1. Marines are expected to maintain proficiency in the training events for their military occupational specialty (MOS) at the appropriate grade or billet to which assigned. Leaders are responsible for recording the training achievements of their Marines. For collective or individual training events not executed and evaluated as part of the daily routine, leaders must ensure proficiency is sustained by requiring retraining of each event at or before expiration of the designated sustainment interval.

2. The evaluation of training is necessary to properly prepare Marines for combat. Evaluations are either formal or informal, and performed by members of the unit (internal evaluation) or from an external command (external evaluation). The purpose of formal and informal evaluation is to provide commanders with a process to determine a unit's/Marine's proficiency in the tasks that must be performed in combat. Informal evaluations are conducted during every training evolution. Formal evaluations are often scenario-based, focused on the unit's METs, based on collective training standards, and usually conducted during higher-level collective events.

3. Evaluation is a continuous process that is integral to training management and is conducted by leaders at every level and during all phases of planning and the conduct of training. To ensure training is efficient and effective, evaluation is an integral part of the training plan. Ultimately, leaders remain responsible for determining if the training was effective.

## **1004. ORGANIZATION**

This Marine Corps Security Force Regiment T&R Manual is comprised of 10 chapters and 2 appendices. Chapter 1 is an overview of the Ground T&R Program. Chapter 2 lists the core METs/Marine Corps tasks supported by the Community, which are used as part of the DRRS. Chapter 3 through 8 contains collective events. Chapters 9 through 10 contain individual events specific to a particular MOS and/or billet, as noted. Appendix A contains acronyms; Appendix B contains terms and definitions.

## **1005. T&R EVENT CODING**

1. Event Code. The event code is an up to 4-4-4 alphanumeric character set:



- a. First up to 4 characters indicate MOS or community (e.g., 0321, 1812 or INTL)
- b. Second up to 4 characters indicate functional or duty area (e.g. DEF, FSPT, MVMT, etc.)
- c. Third 4 characters indicate the unit size and supported unit, if applicable (1000 through 9000), and sequence. Figure 1-1 shows the relationship of unit size to event code. NOTE: The titles for the various echelons are for example only, and are not exclusive. For example: 4000-level events are appropriate for section-level events as noted, but also for squad-level events.

<b>Collective Training</b> <b>Command Element</b>	<b>Collective Training</b> <b>Regiment/Group</b>	<b>Collective Training</b> <b>Battalion/Squadron</b>
9000-level	8000-level	7000-level
<b>Collective Training</b> <b>Company</b>	<b>Collective Training</b> <b>Platoon</b>	<b>Collective Training</b> <b>Squad</b>
6000-level	5000-level	4000-level
<b>Collective Training</b> <b>Team/Section/Crew</b>	<b>Individual Training</b> <b>Skills Progression</b> <b>MOJT, Advanced Level</b> <b>Schools</b> <b>(Core Plus Skills)</b>	<b>Individual Training</b> <b>Entry-Level</b> <b>Formal School</b> <b>Training</b> <b>(Core Skills)</b>
3000-level	2000-level	1000-level

Figure. 1-1 T&R Event Levels

2. Grouping. Categorizing events with the use of a recognizable code makes the type of skill or capability being referenced fairly obvious. Examples include: PAT for patrolling events, DEF for events in the defense, FSPT for events related to fire support, etc. There is no special significance to the functional areas, but they should be intuitive to make it as easy as possible for the T&R user to find events. When organizing this T&R Manual, functional areas are alphabetized then the associated events are numbered. The events will be numbered based upon the introduction of each new functional area, allowing up to "999" events. For example: if there are seven administrative events 4431 occupational field (OccFld), then the events should start 4431-ADMN-1001 and run through 1007. Next, the bulk fuel events, BUFL should start at 4431-BUFL-1001.

3. Sequencing. A numerical code is assigned to each collective (3000-9000 level) or individual (1000-2000 level) training event. The first number identifies the size of the unit performing the event, as depicted in figure 1-1. Exception: Events that relate to staff planning, to conduct of a command operations center, or to staff level decision making processes will be numbered according to the level of the unit to which the staff belongs. For example: an infantry battalion staff conducting planning for an offensive attack would be labeled as INF-PLAN-7001 even though the entire battalion is not actively involved in the planning of the operation. T&R event sequence numbers that begin with "9" are reserved for Marine air-ground

task force (MAGTF) command element events. An example of event coding is displayed in figure 1-2.

<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Functional Area</b></p> <p>MOS/Community-----&gt; <u>####-####-###</u> &lt;-1st event in sequence</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b><u>Event level</u></b></p>
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Figure 1-2. T&R Event Coding

#### 1006. T&R EVENT COMPOSITION

1. An event contained within a T&R manual is a collective or individual training standard. This section explains each of the components that make up the T&R event. These items will be included in all of the events in each T&R manual. Community-based T&R manuals may have several additional components not found in unit-based T&R manuals. The event condition, event title (behavior) and event standard should be read together as a grammatical sentence.

2. An example of a collective T&R event is provided in figure 1-3 and an example of an individual T&R event is provided in figure 1-4. Events shown in figures are for illustrative purposes only and are not actual T&R events.

<u>XXXX-XXXX-####</u> : Provide interior guard	
<u>SUPPORTED MET(S)</u> : MCT #.#.#	
<u>EVALUATION CODED</u> : YES/NO	<u>SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL</u> : 12 months
<u>DESCRIPTION</u> : Text	
<u>CONDITION</u> : Text	
<u>STANDARD</u> : Text	
<u>EVENT COMPONENTS</u> :	
1. Event component.	
2. Event component.	
3. Event component.	
<u>REFERENCES</u> :	
1. Reference	
2. Reference	
3. Reference	
<u>PREREQUISITE EVENTS</u> :	
<u>XXXX-XXXX-####</u>	<u>XXXX-XXXX-####</u>
<u>INTERNAL SUPPORTED</u> :	
<u>XXXX-XXXX-####</u>	<u>XXXX-XXXX-####</u>
<u>INTERNAL SUPPORTING</u> :	
<u>XXXX-XXXX-####</u>	<u>XXXX-XXXX-####</u>

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: XXX

MISCELLANEOUS: XXX

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: XXX

Figure 1-3. Example of a Collective T&R Event

XXXX-XXXX-####: Stand a sentry post

EVALUATION CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Text

MOS PERFORMING: ####, ####

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: XXX

CONDITION: Text

STANDARD: Text

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Event component.
2. Event component.
3. Event component.

REFERENCES:

1. Reference
2. Reference
3. Reference

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

XXXX-XXXX-#### XXXX-XXXX-####

INTERNAL SUPPORTED:

XXXX-XXXX-#### XXXX-XXXX-####

INTERNAL SUPPORTING:

XXXX-XXXX-#### XXXX-XXXX-####

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: XXX

MISCELLANEOUS: XXX

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: XXX

Figure 1-4. Example of an Individual Event

1. Event Code. The event code is explained in paragraph 1005.

2. Title. The name of the event. The event title contains one action verb and one object.
3. Evaluation-Coded (E-Coded). Collective events categorize the capabilities that a given unit may be expected to perform. There are some collective events that the Marine Corps has determined that a unit MUST be able to perform, if that unit is to be considered fully ready for operations. These E-Coded events represent the irreducible minimum or the floor of readiness for a unit. These E-Coded events are derived from the training measures of effectiveness (MOE) for the METs for units that must report readiness in DRRS. It would seem intuitive that most E-Coded events would be for battalion sized units and higher since those are the units that report in DRRS. However, if the Marine Corps has determined that the readiness of a subordinate, supporting unit to accomplish a particular collective event is vital to the accomplishment of the supported unit's MET, then that lower echelon collective event is E-Coded.
4. Supported MET(s). List all METs that are supported by the training event in the judgment of the OccFld drafting the T&R manual, even if those events are not listed as MOE in a MET.
5. Sustainment Interval. It is critical to understand the intent of the sustainment interval so training time is not wasted with duplicated training. Sustainment interval is expressed in number of months. Most individual T&R events and many lower level collective events are never out of sustainment because they are either part of a Marine's daily routine, or are frequently executed within the sustainment interval. Sustainment interval is relevant when an individual or collective event is not observed and evaluated within the sustainment period, has atrophied, and therefore retraining and evaluation is required.
6. Billet/MOS. Each individual training event will contain a billet code and/or MOS that designates who is responsible for performing that event and any corresponding formal course required for that billet. Each commander has the flexibility to shift responsibilities based on the organization of his command. These codes are based on recommendations from the collective subject matter expertise that developed this manual and are listed for each event.
7. Grade. The grade field indicates the rank at which Marines are required to complete the event.
8. Description. This field allows T&R developers to include an explanation of event purpose, objectives, goals, and requirements. It is a general description of an action requiring learned skills and knowledge, i.e., engage fixed target with crew-served weapons. This is an optional field for individual events but is required for collective events. This field can be of great value guiding a formal school or OPFOR unit trying to discern the intent behind an event that might not be readily apparent.
9. Condition. Condition refers to the constraints that may affect event performance in a real-world environment. It indicates what is provided (equipment, tools, materials, manuals, aids, etc.), environmental constraints or conditions under which the task is to be performed, and any specific cues or indicators to which the performer must respond. Commanders can modify the conditions of the event to best prepare their Marines to accomplish the assigned mission (e.g. in a desert environment; in a mountain environment;

etc.). When resources or safety requirements limit the conditions, this should be stated. The content of the condition should be included in the event on a "by exception" basis. If there exists an assumption regarding the conditions under which all or most of the events in the manual will be performed, then only those additional or exceptional items required should be listed in the condition. The common conditions under which all the events in a chapter will be executed will be listed as a separate paragraph at the beginning of the chapter.

10. Standard. The performance standard indicates the basis for judging the effectiveness of the performance. It consists of a carefully worded statement that identifies the proficiency level expected when the task is performed. The standard provides the minimum acceptable performance parameters and must be strictly adhered to. The standard for collective events will likely be general, describing the desired end-state or purpose of the event. The standard for individual events will be objective, quantifiable, and readily observable. Standards will more specifically describe to what proficiency level, specified in terms of accuracy, completeness, time required, and sequencing the event is to be accomplished. These guidelines can be summarized in the acronym "ACTS" (Accuracy Completeness Time Sequence). In no cases will "per the reference" or "per/in accordance with commander's intent" be used as a stand-alone standard.

11. Event Components/Performance Steps. Description of the actions that the event is composed of, or a list of subordinate, included T&R event and event descriptions. The event components help the user determine what must be accomplished and the proper sequence of execution of subordinate events. Event components are used for collective events; performance steps are used for individual events.

a. The event components and performance steps will be consciously written so that they may be employed as performance evaluation check lists by the OPFORs. They must be sequenced to demonstrate the building block approach to training.

b. Event components may be events one individual in the unit performs, events that small groups in the unit perform, or events involving the entire unit.

12. Chained Events. Enables unit leaders to effectively identify prerequisite, supporting, and supported events that ultimately support MCTs/METs. Supported events are chained to supporting events to enable the accomplishment of the supported event to standard and therefore are considered "chained". The completion of identified supported events can be utilized to update sustainment interval credit for supporting events, based on the assessment of the commander.

13. Prerequisite Events. Prerequisites are academic training or other T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the task. They are lower-level events or tasks that give the individual/unit the skills required to accomplish the event. They can also be planning steps, administrative requirements, or specific parameters that build toward mission accomplishment.

14. Supported Event. An event whose performance is inherently supported by the performance of one or more supporting events. A supported event will be

classified as internal supported if it has been developed specifically for the community. A supported event that has been chained to an event from an external community T&R will be classified as external supported.

15. Supporting Event. An event whose performance inherently supports the performance of a supported event. A supporting event will be classified as internal supporting if it has been developed specifically for the community. A supporting event that has been chained to a community event from an external community T&R will be classified as external supporting.

16. Initial Training Setting. All individual events will designate the setting at which the skill is first taught, either formally, Marine on the Job Training (MOJT) within the OPFOR, or via a distance learning product (DL).

17. References. The training references shall be utilized to determine task performance steps. They assist the trainee in satisfying the performance standards, or the trainer in evaluating the effectiveness of task completion. T&R manuals are designed to be a training outline, not to replicate or replace doctrinal publications, reference publications or technical manuals. References are key to developing detailed lesson plans, determining grading criteria, and ensuring standardization of training. For individual events only one authoritative reference is required.

18. Distance Learning Products. Distance learning products include: Individual multimedia instruction, computer-based training, MarineNet, etc. This notation is included when, in the opinion of the T&R manual group charter in consultation with the Marine Air-Ground Task Force T&R Standards Division representative, the event can be taught via one of these media vice attending a formal course of instruction or receiving MOJT.

19. Support Requirements. This is a list of the external and internal support the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. This is a key section in the overall T&R effort, as resources will eventually be tied directly to the training towards METS. Future efforts to attain and allocate resources will be based on the requirements outlined in the T&R manual. The list includes, but is not limited to:

- Range(s)/Training Area
- Ordnance
- Equipment
- Materials
- Other Units/Personnel

The ordnance requirements for one year of training for the events in the T&R will be aggregated into a table contained in an appendix to the T&R. The task analyst and the OccFld representatives will be careful not to "double count" ammunition that might be employed in the performance of collective and individual events that are chained.

20. Suitability of Simulation/Simulators/DL products. The following "Suitability and Sequence" codes listed in figure 1-5 have been developed to communicate characteristics for employing simulations during training. Units of measure have been assigned based on the amount of time it takes a Marine or unit to train to task utilizing a particular simulator. Suitability and sequence codes are captured in the event title in a parenthetical remark, as

well as within the simulation field of the T&R event. The simulation field also identifies the type of simulation, units of measure, and any other pertinent information.

Code	Requirement
L	The event can only be trained to standard in a Live environment. Any event assessed as "NO" for Simulatable was coded "L."
P	The event must be performed to standard in simulator as a PREREQUISITE to live fire qualification as per current doctrine, policy, or T&R manual.
S/L	Event must be trained to standard in simulation then live unless simulation capacity is not available, then live only training is appropriate.
L/S	Event must be trained to standard in a live environment then simulation unless simulation capacity is not available, then live only training is appropriate.
S	Event can ONLY be conducted to standard and qualification in simulator.

Figure 1-5. Suitability and sequence codes

a. Training simulation capabilities offer an opportunity to build and sustain proficiency while achieving and/or maintaining certain economies. Commanders should take into consideration simulation tools as a matter of course when designing training.

b. Simulation Terms:

(1) Simulation: A model of a system animated discretely or continuously over a period of time. A simulation may be closed-loop (i.e., it executes based in initial inputs without human intervention), or it may be open-loop (i.e., human input to alter the variables in the system during execution is allowed). A simulation is an approximation of how the modeled system will behave over time. Simulations are constructed based on verified and validated mathematical models of actual systems. Simulations can be very simple or complex depending on the degree of fidelity and resolution needed to understand the behavior of a system.

(2) Simulator: A simulator is the physical apparatus employed as the interface for humans to interact with a model or observe its output. A simulator has input controls and outputs in the form of human sensory stimuli (visual, auditory, olfactory, tactile/haptic, and taste). For instance, some of the features of the vehicle cab (the seat, steering wheel, turn signals, accelerator pedal, brakes, and windshield) and projection screen. Both the vehicle cab and projection screen are the interface by which a human being interacts with the simulated environment of a driving a vehicle and observe the outputs of the mathematical models of vehicle dynamics.

(3) Model: A mathematical representation of the behavior (i.e., shows the behavior of projectiles, combat simulations, etc.) of a system at a distinct point in time.

(4) Live: Real people operates real systems to include both live people operating real platforms or systems on a training range and battle

staffs from joint, component or service tactical headquarters using real world command and control systems.

(5) Virtual: Real people operating simulated systems. Virtual simulations inject humans-in-the-loop in a central role by exercising motor control skills (e.g., flying an air platform simulator, engaging targets in indoor simulated marksmanship trainer), decision skills, and/or communication skills.

(6) Constructive: Models and simulations that involve simulated people operating simulated systems (i.e., MAGTF Tactical Warfare Simulation). Real people make inputs to such simulations, but are not involved in determining the outcomes.

(7) Live, Virtual and Constructive (LVC) Training Environment: Defined by combining any of the three training domains LVC to create a common operational environment, by which units can interact across LVC domains as though they are physically located in the same operational environment.

(8) Distance Learning: Any instruction and evaluation provided through a variety of DL delivery systems (i.e., MarineNet) where the students and instructors are separated by time and/or location.

c. Figure 1-6 depicts an event title with simulation code and simulation and/or simulators that can be used, as displayed within a T&R event.

<b><u>XXXX-XXX-XXXX</u></b> : Call for indirect fire using the grid method (L/S)					
<b><u>SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS</u></b> :					
<b><u>SIMULATION EVALUATION</u></b> :					
<b><u>SIMULATED</u></b>	<b><u>SUITABILITY</u></b>	<b><u>SIMULATOR</u></b>	<b><u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u></b>	<b><u>HOURS</u></b>	<b><u>PM</u></b>
Yes	L/S	ODS	Marine Hours	12	Y

Figure 1-6. Example of simulation/simulators displayed within a T&R event

## 21. Miscellaneous

a. This field provides space for any additional information that will assist in the planning and execution of the event. Units and formal learning centers are cautioned not to disregard this information or to consider the information of lesser importance than what is contained in other parts of the T&R event. Miscellaneous fields provide an opportunity for the drafters of the T&R event to communicate vital information that might not fit neatly into any other available field. The list may include, but is not limited to:

- Admin Instructions
- Special Personnel Certifications
- Equipment Operating Hours
- Road Miles

## 1007. COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP)



1. The Marine Corps ground T&R program includes processes to assess readiness of units and individual Marines. Every unit in the Marine Corps maintains a basic level of readiness based on the training and experience of the Marines in the unit. Even units that never trained together are capable of accomplishing some portion of their missions. Combat readiness assessment does not associate a quantitative value for this baseline of readiness, but uses a "Combat Readiness Percentage" as a method to provide a concise descriptor of the recent training accomplishments of units and Marines.
2. Combat readiness percentage is the percentage of required training events that a unit or Marine accomplishes within specified sustainment intervals.
3. Unit combat readiness is assessed as a percentage of the successfully completed and current (within sustainment interval) key training events called E-Coded Events. E-Coded events and unit CRP calculation are described in follow-on paragraphs. The CRP achieved through the completion of E-Coded Events is directly relevant to readiness assessment in DRRS.

#### **1008. CRP CALCULATION**

1. Collective training begins at the 3000-level (team, crew, or equivalent). Unit training plans are designed to accomplish the events that support the unit METL while simultaneously sustaining proficiency in individual core skills. E-Coded collective events are the only events that contribute to unit CRP. This is done to assist commanders in prioritizing the training toward the METL, taking into account resource, time, and personnel constraints.
2. Unit CRP increases after the completion of E-Coded events. The number of E-Coded events for the MET determines the value of each E-Coded event. For example, if there are 4 E-Coded events for a MET, each is worth 25% of MET CRP. The MET CRP is calculated by adding the percentage of each completed and current (within sustainment interval) E-Coded training event. The percentage for each MET is calculated the same way and all are added together and divided by the number of METS to determine unit CRP. For ease of calculation, we will say that each MET has four E-Coded events, each contributing 25% towards the completion of the MET. If the unit has completed and is current on three of the four E-Coded events for a given MET, then they have completed 75% of the MET. The CRP for each MET is added together and divided by the number of METS to get unit CRP; unit CRP is the average of MET CRP.

For Example:

MET 1: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)  
MET 2: 100% complete (6 of 6 E-Coded events trained)  
MET 3: 25% complete (1 of 4 E-Coded events trained)  
MET 4: 50% complete (2 of 4 E-Coded events trained)  
MET 5: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)

To get unit CRP, simply add the CRP for each MET and divide by the number of METS:

MET CRP:  $75 + 100 + 25 + 50 + 75 = 325$

Unit CRP:  $325 \text{ (total MET CRP)} / 5 \text{ (total number of METS)} = 65\%$

3. Combat readiness percentage is a valuable tool to assist commanders in readiness reporting by providing objective data to support and inform their subjective assessment.

#### **1009. CHEMICAL BIOLOGICAL RADIOLOGICAL NUCLEAR TRAINING**

1. All personnel assigned to the OPFOR must be trained in chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) defense in order to survive and continue their mission in this environment. Individual proficiency standards are defined as survival and basic operating standards. Survival standards are those that the individual must master in order to survive CBRN attacks. Basic operating standards are those that the individual, and collectively the unit, must perform to continue operations in a CBRN environment.

2. In order to develop and maintain the ability to operate in a CBRN environment, CBRN training is an integral part of the training plan and events in this T&R Manual. Units should train under CBRN conditions whenever possible. Per reference (c), all units must be capable of accomplishing their assigned mission in a contaminated environment.

#### **1010. NIGHT TRAINING**

1. While it is understood that all personnel and units of the OPFOR are capable of performing their assigned mission in "every clime and place," current doctrine emphasizes the requirement to perform assigned missions at night and during periods of limited visibility. Basic skills are significantly more difficult when visibility is limited.

2. To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission they must train under the conditions of limited visibility. Units should strive to conduct all events in this T&R Manual during both day and night/limited visibility conditions. When there is limited training time available, night training should take precedence over daylight training, contingent on the availability of equipment and personnel.

#### **1011. RISK MANAGEMENT (RM)**

1. Risk management is a process that enables commanders to plan for and minimize risk while still accomplishing the mission. It is a tool to aid decision making used by Marines at all levels to increase effectiveness by anticipating hazards and reducing the potential for loss, thereby increasing the probability of success. Risk management minimizes risks to acceptable levels, commensurate with mission accomplishment.

2. All leaders and Marines will integrate RM in the planning process and implement hazard controls to reduce risk to acceptable levels. Applying the RM process will reduce mishaps, injuries, and damage they cause, thereby increasing both individual performance and unit readiness. Risk management assists the commander in avoiding unnecessary risk, determining the balance between training realism and unnecessary risks in training, making an informed decision to implement a course of action, identifying feasible and effective control measures, adjusting training plans to fit the level of

proficiency and experience of Marines/Sailors, and providing reasonable alternatives for mission accomplishment.

3. Specifically, commanders are required to implement and document deliberate RM in the planning and execution of all training evolutions and activities. Furthermore, the authority to approve or accept risk assessment code (RAC) 1 or 2 hazards will not be delegated below lieutenant colonel (O5). Further guidance for RM is found in Marine Corps Order 3500.27\_.

#### **1012. IMPROVISED EXPLOSIVE TRAINING**

1. Improvised explosive device (IED) threat impacts all elements of the MAGTF and all Marines regardless of MOS, location, or operational environment. The ability to effectively operate and survive in environments with an IED threat is critical to force protection, maintaining combat effectiveness, and mission accomplishment.

2. Per Marine Corps policy on organizing, training, and equipping for operations in an IED environment (MCO 3502.9), Marines must be capable of not only accomplishing their assigned mission, but also accomplishing their mission in environments with an IED threat. Counter-improvised explosive device (C-IED) training must be integrated into the unit training plan in order to ensure personnel assigned to the OPFOR train and maintain proficiency in C-IED tactics, techniques, and procedures.

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION-ESSENTIAL TASKS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
CORE MISSION-ESSENTIAL TASKS (MET). . . . .	2000	2-2
MARINE CORPS SECURITY FORCE REGIMENT. . . . .	2001	2-2
MARINE CORPS SECURITY FORCE REGIMENT, HQ CO . . . . .	2002	2-2
MARINE CORPS SECURITY FORCE BN BANGOR/KINGS BAY . . . . .	2003	2-2
FLEET ANTITERRORISM SECURITY TEAM COMPANY A/B/C . . . . .	2004	2-2
MARINE CORPS SECURITY FORCE REGIMENT, TRAINING CO . . . . .	2005	2-2
MCSF MET-SUPPORTING E-CODED EVENTS. . . . .	2006	2-2

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION-ESSENTIAL TASKS

**2000. CORE MISSION-ESSENTIAL TASKS (MET).** The MET tables list the standardized core METs for various units supported by the MCSFR community.

**2001. MARINE CORPS SECURITY FORCE REGIMENT**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3	Provide Security Forces for Strategic Weapons
MCT 6.1.8	Provide Rapid Response and Forward-Deployed Expeditionary Anti-Terrorism Security Forces

**2002. MARINE CORPS SECURITY FORCE REGIMENT, HQ CO**

MCT 1.1.2.3	Provide Headquarters Personnel and Infrastructure
MCT 4.7.1.1	Train Individual Marines

**2003. MARINE CORPS SECURITY FORCE BN BANGOR/KINGS BAY**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3	Provide Security Forces for Strategic Weapons
MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2	Conduct Security in Support of Strategic Weapons Logistics Moves
MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3	Conduct Recapture of Strategic Assets
MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4	Conduct Recovery of Strategic Assets

**2004. FLEET ANTITERRORISM SECURITY TEAM COMPANY A/B/C**

MCT 1.2.4	Deploy Tactical Forces
MCT 1.13.1.1	Conduct Anti-Terrorism Operations
MCT 6.1.1.4	Conduct Ground Security Operations
MCT 6.1.7	Conduct Embassy Reinforcement

**2005. MARINE CORPS SECURITY FORCE REGIMENT, TRAINING CO**

MCT 4.7.1.1	Train Individual Marines
-------------	--------------------------

**2006. MCSF MET-SUPPORTING E-CODED EVENTS**

The MCSF MET-Supporting E-coded Events table lists the E-coded collective T&R events that support the core METs identified in tables 2001-2005. These E-coded T&R events form the basis for unit readiness planning per reference (d), identifying subordinate collective and individual training events through the supporting/chained relationships described in each event.

<b>MCT 1.1.2.3 Provide Headquarters Personnel and Infrastructure</b>
----------------------------------------------------------------------

MCSF-FAST-8001	Provide rapid response and forward deployed expeditionary antiterrorism security forces
MCSF-NWS-8001	Provide security forces for strategic weapons
<b>MCT 4.7.1.1 Train Individual Marines</b>	
MCSF-NWS-8001	Provide security forces for strategic weapons
<b>MCT 6.1.5.2.3 Provide Security Forces for Strategic Weapons</b>	
MCSF-NWS-8001	Provide security forces for strategic weapons
NWS-C2-6002	Conduct planning
NWS-C2-7001	Provide security for strategic weapons
NWS-C2-7002	Conduct security in support of strategic weapons logistics moves
NWS-C2-7006	Conduct planning
NWS-C2-7008	Conduct Command and Control of an Operation
NWS-PS-6001	Control the limited area (LA)
NWS-PS-6002	Control a waterfront restricted area (WRA)
NWS-PS-6003	Control the explosive handling wharf (EHW)
NWS-PS-7001	Conduct augmentation of posted security forces
NWS-PS-7002	Conduct recapture operations
<b>MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2 Conduct Security in Support of Strategic Weapons Logistics Moves</b>	
MCSF-ATFP-5004	Process detainees
NWS-C2-7002	Conduct security in support of strategic weapons logistics moves
NWS-C2-7006	Conduct planning
NWS-PS-5005	Secure a Convoy Route
NWS-PS-7001	Conduct augmentation of posted security forces
<b>MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3 Conduct Recapture of Strategic Assets</b>	
MCSF-MAN-5009	Employ Designated Marksman
NWS-C2-6002	Conduct planning
NWS-C2-7001	Provide security for strategic weapons
NWS-C2-7006	Conduct planning
NWS-C2-7008	Conduct Command and Control of an Operation
NWS-PS-6004	Conduct recapture operations
NWS-PS-7001	Conduct augmentation of posted security forces
NWS-PS-7002	Conduct recapture operations
<b>MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4 Conduct Recovery of Strategic Assets</b>	
NWS-C2-6002	Conduct planning
NWS-C2-7001	Provide security for strategic weapons
NWS-C2-7006	Conduct planning
NWS-C2-7008	Conduct Command and Control of an Operation
NWS-PS-7001	Conduct augmentation of posted security forces
NWS-PS-7002	Conduct recapture operations
NWS-PS-7003	Conduct recovery operations
<b>MCT 1.2.4 Deploy Tactical Forces</b>	
MCSF-C2-5001	Conduct adjacent unit coordination
FAST-CSS-5001	Conduct embarkation
FAST-C2-5003	Conduct deployment
<b>MCT 1.13.1.1 Conduct Antiterrorism Operations</b>	
FAST-ATFP-5001	Conduct force protection
FAST-ATFP-5003	Implement population control measures

MCSF-ATFP-5004	Process detainees
MCSF-CBRN-5001	Operate in a CBRN environment
FAST-CSS-5002	Conduct tactical logistics
MCSF-MAN-4010	React to a security alert
<b>MCT 6.1.1.4 Conduct Ground Security Operations</b>	
MCSF-MAN-5002	Conduct mounted operations
MCSF-C2-5004	Execute command and control
MCSF-CSS-5003	Process casualties
FAST-MAN-5001	Secure an Objective
FAST-C2-5002	Conduct COC operations
<b>MCT 6.1.7 Conduct Embassy Reinforcement</b>	
MCSF-MAN-5005	Defend an Objective
FAST-ATPF-5002	Construct a barrier plan
MCSF-MAN-5006	Execute interior guard
FAST-ATFP-4003	Conduct ECP/VCP operations
MCSF-MAN-4011	Conduct guard mount
MCSF-MAN-5009	Employ designated marksmen

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

8000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	3000	3-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	3001	3-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	3002	3-2
8000-LEVEL EVENTS . . . . .	3003	3-2



MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

8000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**3000. PURPOSE.** Chapter 3 contains the Regiment's 8000 level collective training events for the MCSFR T&R manual.

**3001. EVENT CODING.** Events in this T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12-character, 3-field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one. This field represents the community. This chapter contains the following community codes:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
MCSF	Marine Corps Security Forces

b. Field two. This field represents the functional/duty area. This chapter contains the following functional/duty areas:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
FAST	Fleet Antiterrorism Security Team
NWS	Nuclear Weapons Security

c. Field three. This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events. This chapter contains the following event levels:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
8000	Regiment Level

**3002. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

Event Code	E-Coded	Event
MCSF-FAST-8001	YES	Provide rapid response and forward deployed expeditionary anti-terrorism security forces
MCSF-NWS-8001	YES	Provide security forces for strategic weapons

**3003. 8000-LEVEL EVENTS**

**MCSF-FAST-8001:** Provide rapid response and forward deployed expeditionary anti-terrorism security forces

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1.2.3

MCT 6.1.8

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** MCSF Regiment provides forward deployed expeditionary anti-terrorism and security forces to establish or augment security, support designated commanders, and protect vital national assets. Combat trained infantry Marines will deter, detect, defend against, and mitigate terrorist operations, actions, and attacks. Fleet Anti-Terrorism Security Team (FAST) Platoons, along with task organized command and control elements, are forward deployed to specified theater through the FAST Deployment Program (FDP). Under the operational control of the appropriate combatant commander, they are poised to respond to developing situations and conduct worldwide, short-notice, rapid-response, expeditionary and anti-terrorism operations. CONUS-based FAST Platoons are additionally postured to respond to developing situations worldwide, and are capable of deploying independently for limited duration operations or in conjunction with other expeditionary forces.

**CONDITION:** Given a qualified Fleet Anti-terrorism Security Team.

**STANDARD:** To deploy manned, equipped, trained, and certified security forces in accordance with the mission.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Mission receipt.
2. Initiate recall, as required.
3. Conduct planning.
4. Plan coordination with external agencies.
5. Direct the intelligence effort.
6. Disseminate intelligence.
7. Plan logistics support.
8. Plan communications interoperability.
9. Conduct orders process.
10. Deploy forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 3-1 Command and Staff Action
2. JP 3-0 Joint Operations
3. JP 3-02.2 Amphibious Embarkation
4. JP 3-05 Special Operations
5. JP 3-05.1 Joint Special Operations Task Force Operations
6. JP 3-07.2 Antiterrorism
7. JP 3-57 Civil-Military Operations
8. MCRP 3-03A.1 Civil Affairs Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
9. MCTP 10-10F Military Police Operations
10. MCTP 3-03A Marine Air-Ground Task Force Civil-Military Operations
11. MCWP 3-02 Insurgencies and Countering Insurgencies

---

**MCSF-NWS-8001:** Provide security forces for strategic weapons

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1.2.3

MCT 4.7.1.1

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** MCSF Regiment maintains permanent forces to provide security for strategic weapons at designated facilities. Permanently stationed Marine Corps Security Force Battalions (MCSF Bns), under the operational control of designated Naval Commanders, will deny unauthorized access to, prevent loss of, and prevent unauthorized acts involving strategic weapons. They're given the mission to provide a MCSF unit in direct support of a strategic weapons facility response/reaction force.

**CONDITION:** Given the mission to provide a MCSF unit in direct support of a strategic weapons facility.

**STANDARD:** To maintain the Nuclear Weapons Security Standard in accordance with DoD S5210.41\_ Nuclear Weapons Security Manual.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Train security forces in support of subordinate commands.
2. Staff Marine Corps Security Force Battalions at required levels.
3. Provide personnel with necessary equipment.

**REFERENCES:**

1. CJCSI 3263.05 Nuclear Command and Control Command Assistance Program
2. DoD 5210.42R Nuclear Weapons Personnel Reliability Program Regulation
3. DoDM S-5210.41M Nuclear Weapon Security Manual
4. JP 3-0 Joint Operations
5. JP 3-07.2 Antiterrorism
6. JP 3-57 Civil-Military Operations
7. MCRP 3-03A.1 Civil Affairs Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
8. MCTP 10-10F Military Police Operations
9. MCTP 3-03A Marine Air-Ground Task Force Civil-Military Operations
10. MCWP 3-02 Insurgencies and Countering Insurgencies
11. SECNAVINST 5510.35B Department of the Navy Nuclear Weapons Personnel Reliability Program Instruction
12. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations
13. SECNAVINST 8120.1A Department of the Navy Nuclear Weapons Responsibilities and Authorities
14. SECNAVINST 8126 Naval Nuclear Weapons Security Policy
15. SSPINST S-8126

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

NWS-C2-7001	NWS-C2-7002	NWS-C2-7003
NWS-C2-7004	NWS-C2-7005	NWS-C2-7006
NWS-C2-7007	NWS-PS-7001	NWS-PS-7002
NWS-PS-7003		

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

7000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	4000	4-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	4001	4-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	4002	4-2
7000-LEVEL EVENTS . . . . .	4003	4-2

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

7000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**4000. PURPOSE.** Chapter 4 contains 7000 level collective training events for the MCSF T&R manual.

**4001. EVENT CODING.** Events in this T&R manual are depicted with an up to 12-character, 3-field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one. This field represents the community. This chapter contains the following community codes:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
NWS	Nuclear Weapons Security

b. Field two. This field represents the functional/duty area. This chapter contains the following functional/duty areas:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
C2	Command and Control
PS	Physical Security

c. Field three. This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events. This chapter contains the following event levels:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
7000	Battalion Level

**4002. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

Event Code	E-Coded	Event
NWS-C2-7001	YES	Provide security for strategic weapons
NWS-C2-7002	YES	Conduct security in support of strategic weapons logistics moves
NWS-C2-7003	NO	Plan Coordination with External Agencies
NWS-C2-7004	NO	Conduct Intelligence Operations
NWS-C2-7005	YES	Conduct planning
NWS-C2-7006	NO	Conduct logistics planning
NWS-C2-7007	YES	Conduct Command and Control Operations
NWS-PS-7001	YES	Conduct augmentation of posted security forces
NWS-PS-7002	YES	Conduct recapture operations
NWS-PS-7003	YES	Conduct recovery operations

**4003. 7000-LEVEL EVENTS**

**NWS-C2-7001:** Provide security for strategic weapons

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given an MCSF unit in direct support of a strategic weapons facility in accordance with DoD S5210.41M

**STANDARD:** To maintain the Nuclear Weapons Security Standard

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Control the Convoy Route
2. Control the Limited Area
3. Control the waterfront restricted area
4. Control the explosive handling wharf
5. Coordinate with external agencies
6. Conduct Logistics support

**REFERENCES:**

1. 6. SECNAVINST 5510.35B Department of the Navy Nuclear Weapons Personnel Reliability Program Instruction
2. CJCSI 3263.05 Nuclear Command and Control Command Assistance Program
3. DoD 5210.42R Nuclear Weapons Personnel Reliability Program Regulation
4. DoD S-5210.41M Nuclear Weapon Security Manual
5. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations
6. SECNAVINST 8120.1A Department of the Navy Nuclear Weapons Responsibilities and Authorities
7. SECNAVINST 8126 Naval Nuclear Weapons Security Policy
8. SSPINST S-8126

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** MCSF-NWS-8001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

NWS-C2-6001

NWS-PS-6001

NWS-PS-6002

NWS-PS-6003

NWS-PS-6004

---

**NWS-C2-7002:** Conduct security in support of strategic weapons logistics moves

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given an MCSF unit in direct support of a strategic weapons facility.

**STANDARD:** To maintain the Nuclear Weapons Security Standard in accordance with DoD S-5210.41\_ Nuclear Weapons Security Manual.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Secure the Convoy route
2. Control the convoy route
3. Secure Dockside Handling Building as necessary
4. Conduct convoy operations

## REFERENCES :

1. DoD S-5210.41M Nuclear Weapon Security Manual
2. SECNAVINST 8126 Naval Nuclear Weapons Security Policy
3. SECNAVINST S8126

### CHAINED EVENTS:

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** MCSF-NWS-8001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** NWS-C2-6001

**NWS-C2-7003:** Plan Coordination with External Agencies

**SUPPORTED MET(S) :**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3 MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3 MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given joint, combined, and/or interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, commander's guidance, and references.

**STANDARD:** To achieve unity of effort and bring all relevant assets to bear on the situation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify capabilities limitations and shortfalls from staff assessments.
2. Identify existing Joint, Interagency, Intergovernmental, and Multinational (JIIM) Organizations in your area of operations and area of interest.
3. Synchronize goals, tasks, capabilities, limitations, and key leadership command/support relationships.
4. Identify JIIM organizational gaps.
5. Coordinate the support of JIIM.
6. Identify security and planning requirements for JIIM.
7. Verify unity of effort/purpose.
8. Assess unity of effort/purpose.

**REFERENCES:** JP 3-08 Interorganizational Cooperation

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** MCSF-NWS-8001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** NWS-C2-6001

---

**NWS-C2-7004:** Conduct Intelligence Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Intelligence functions support the decision making process of commanders down to the small unit level. All six functions are carried out during the planning, decision, execution, and assessment (PDE&A) cycle at all levels throughout the force.

**CONDITION:** Given an intelligence section, all applicable orders and guidance, higher headquarters mission tasking, references, software and systems, access to available communication networks, production and presentation equipment and materials.

**STANDARD:** To satisfy the Commander's planning, decision, execution, and assessment (PDE&A) within the established time limits and constraints.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Support the commander's estimate.
2. Identify intelligence resources and shortfalls.
3. Support situational development.
4. Provide Indications and Warnings (I&W).
5. Provide support to Force Protection.
6. Identify intelligence resources and shortfalls.
7. Request intelligence resource, asset, and augmentation support as required.
8. Integrate intelligence and collections plans, operations, and products from subordinate and adjacent units into the intelligence cycle.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DIA Intelligence Reference Document DI 2820-4-03 Battle Damage Assessment Quick Guide
2. MCRP 2-10A.2 Counterintelligence
3. MCRP 2-10A.5 Remote Sensor Operations
4. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
5. MCRP 2-10B.4 Geospatial Information and Intelligence
6. MCRP 2-10B.5 Imagery Intelligence
7. MCRP 2-10B.6 MAGTF Meteorology and Oceanography Support
8. MCRP 3-16A Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Targeting Process
9. MCRP 3-32D.1 Electronic Warfare
10. MCTP 2-10A MAGTF Intelligence Collection
11. MCTP 2-10B MAGTF Intelligence Production and Analysis
12. MCTP 2-10C Marine Air-Ground Task Force Intelligence Dissemination

**CHAINED EVENTS:**



**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** MCSF-NWS-8001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** NWS-C2-6001

---

**NWS-C2-7005:** Conduct planning

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The process which develops an order/plan to direct actions and focuses subordinate activities toward accomplishing the mission.

**CONDITION:** Given commander's guidance, a higher headquarters order/plan, and a battle staff.

**STANDARD:** To communicate the commander's intent, guidance, and decisions in a clear, useful form that is easily understood by those who must execute the order/plan.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Determine time available.
2. Establish timeline for planning and preparation.
3. Determine appropriate planning process (MCP, R2P2, Hasty Planning, or other method).
4. Establish Operational Planning Team (OPT).
5. Conduct Problem Framing.
6. Conduct Course of Action (COA) development.
7. Conduct COA Wargaming.
8. Conduct COA comparison and decision.
9. Conduct orders development.
10. Conduct transition.
11. Implement feedback mechanisms.

**REFERENCES:** MCWP 5-10 Marine Corps Planning Process

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** MCSF-NWS-8001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** NWS-C2-6001

---

**NWS-C2-7006:** Conduct logistics planning

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit task organization and equipment (TO/E) and supporting attachments, a mission, commander's intent, and references.

**STANDARD:** To ensure equipment and personnel sustainment in accordance with the unit's concept of support and mission accomplishments.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify unit on hand TO&E strengths.
2. Identify organic capabilities.
3. Coordinate transportation requirements.
4. Coordinate maintenance requirements.
5. Coordinate engineering requirements.
6. Coordinate supply requirements.
7. Coordinate services required.
8. Coordinate medical requirements.
9. Coordinate detainee operations requirements.
10. Coordinate external support.
11. Identify support relationships.
12. Prepare concept of support.
13. Determine priority of support.
14. Develop logistics tracking process.
15. Assign tasks to subordinate supporting elements.
16. Identify contracting requirements.
17. Identify critical shortfalls.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCTP 3-40A Health Service Support Operations
2. MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations
3. MCTP 3-40H MAGTF Supply Operations
4. MCWP 3-40 Logistics Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** MCSF-NWS-8001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** NWS-C2-6001

---

**NWS-C2-7007:** Conduct Command and Control Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given an operations order and a functional communications architecture.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Implement Tactical Control Measures.
2. Track decision points (CCIRs, Essential Elements of Friendly Information (EEFI)).
3. Track higher, adjacent, supporting units.
4. Provide FRAG orders to subordinate and subordinate elements.
5. Provide information to Higher, Adjacent, and supporting units.
6. Monitor transitions (phases, units, etc).
7. Maintain situational awareness.
8. Prepare for follow on operations as appropriate (branches, sequels, etc).

**REFERENCES:**

1. DCOCSOP Digital COC SOP for Battalion Operations in Irregular Warfare
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-40 Logistics Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** MCSF-NWS-8001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** NWS-C2-6001

---

**NWS-PS-7001:** Conduct augmentation of posted security forces

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Situations may arise where the manpower available to the posted guard force is not sufficient to handle a particular contingency. In such cases, MCSF Battalion conducts augmentation of posted guard force with designated off-post Marines.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit in direct support of a strategic weapons facility

**STANDARD:** To provide (15) Marines, with required weapons, equipment, and transportation to the posted guard force in accordance with DoDD 5210.41\_.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. React to a security alert
2. Identify requirement to augment security forces
3. Initiate recall
4. Deploy forces
5. Reconstitute Forces
6. Conduct Debrief

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual
2. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
3. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** MCSF-NWS-8001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

NWS-C2-6001

NWS-PS-6001

NWS-PS-6002

NWS-PS-6003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**NWS-PS-7002:** Conduct recapture operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** As a permanently stationed force in Direct Support of Commander, Strategic Weapons Facility, MCSFBN conducts recapture operations in order to reestablish the Nuclear Weapons Security Standards. MCSFBN will incorporate forces, tactics, technology, engineering efforts, and other non-material solutions.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized MCSF unit, all necessary equipment, and an objective aboard a base with a strategic weapons facility.

**STANDARD:** To regain positive control of compromised strategic assets and reestablish the Nuclear Weapons Security Standard in accordance with DODD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. React to Security alert.
2. Conduct coordination with external agencies if applicable.
3. Reestablish positive control of the weapons.

**REFERENCES:**

1. CJCSI 3263.05 Nuclear Command and Control Command Assistance Program
2. DoD 5210.42R Nuclear Weapons Personnel Reliability Program Regulation
3. DoDM S-5210.41M Nuclear Weapon Security Manual
4. SECNAVINST 5510.35B Department of the Navy Nuclear Weapons Personnel Reliability Program Instruction
5. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations
6. SECNAVINST 8120.1A Department of the Navy Nuclear Weapons Responsibilities and Authorities
7. SSPINST S-8126

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** MCSF-NWS-8001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**  
NWS-C2-6001 NWS-PS-6004

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**NWS-PS-7003:** Conduct recovery operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** As a permanently stationed force in Direct Support of Commander, Strategic Weapons Facility (SWF), MCSFBN conducts recovery operation in order to reestablish Nuclear Weapons Security Standard.

**CONDITION:** Given any location outside of a military installation hosting a Strategic Weapons Facility.

**STANDARD:** To return strategic assets to US government control in accordance with applicable laws.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. React to Security alert.
2. Conduct Battalion recall.
3. Coordinate with external agencies.
4. Reestablish positive control of the asset.
5. Establish an NDA (National Defense Area).
6. Reconstitute Forces.

**REFERENCES:**

1. CJCSI 3263.05 Nuclear Command and Control Command Assistance Program
2. DoD 5210.42R Nuclear Weapons Personnel Reliability Program Regulation

3. DoDM S-5210.41M Nuclear Weapon Security Manual
4. SECNAVINST 5510.35B Department of the Navy Nuclear Weapons Personnel Reliability Program Instruction
5. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations
6. SECNAVINST 8120.1A Department of the Navy Nuclear Weapons Responsibilities and Authorities
7. SECNAVINST 8126 Naval Nuclear Weapons Security Policy
8. SSPINST S-8126

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** MCSF-NWS-8001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** NWS-C2-6001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

6000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	5000	5-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	5001	5-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	5002	5-2
6000-LEVEL EVENTS . . . . .	5003	5-2

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

6000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**5000. PURPOSE.** Chapter 5 contains the 6000 level collective training events for the MCSF T&R Manual.

**5001. EVENT CODING.** Events in this T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12-character, 3-field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one. This field represents the community. This chapter contains the following community codes:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
NWS	Nuclear Weapons Security
FAST	Fleet Antiterrorism Security Team
MCSF	Marine Corps Security Forces Regiment

b. Field two. This field represents the functional/duty area. This chapter contains the following functional/duty areas:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
C2	Command and Control
MAN	Maneuver

c. Field three. This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events. This chapter contains the following event levels:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
6000	Company Level

**5002. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

Event Code	E-Coded	Event
FAST-ATFP-6001	YES	Conduct antiterrorism operations
FAST-C2-6001	NO	Maintain an alert force
FAST-CSS-6001	YES	Provide forces
FAST-MAN-6001	YES	Conduct ground security operations
FAST-MAN-6002	NO	Operate in Urban Terrain
NWS-C2-6001	NO	Conduct planning
NWS-PS-6001	YES	Control the limited area (LA)
NWS-PS-6002	YES	Control a waterfront restricted area (WRA)
NWS-PS-6003	YES	Control the explosive handling wharf (EHW)
NWS-PS-6004	YES	Conduct recapture operations

**5003. 6000-LEVEL EVENTS**



**FAST-ATFP-6001:** Conduct antiterrorism operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 6.1.8

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** To conduct company or platoon level defensive and security measures used to reduce the vulnerability of individuals and property to terrorist acts. This includes limited response and containment within the capabilities of a FAST unit. The operations take place in the U.S. and worldwide, including bases, facilities, embassies, consulates, and vessels.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit, a mission, commander's intent, and references.

**STANDARD:** To deter, detect, defend, and mitigate against the effects of terrorist actions.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Coordinate with higher/adjacent/supporting units.
2. Conduct mission planning.
3. Conduct antiterrorism / force-protection operations as required by mission and commander's intent.
4. React to a Security Alert.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCRP 12-10B.1 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
3. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
4. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-C2-5001	FAST-C2-5002	FAST-MAN-5002
MCSF-ATFP-5001	MCSF-ATFP-5002	MCSF-ATFP-5003
MCSF-C2-5001	MCSF-C2-5002	MCSF-CBRN-5001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**FAST-C2-6001:** Maintain an alert force

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 6.1.8

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a FAST Company, the requirement to maintain an alert force consisting of (1) FAST Platoon, and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To maintain a platoon size force capable of deploying in support of contingency operations within a specified time of receipt of a deployment order.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Task organize.
3. Verify rosters.
4. Conduct mobility exercise.

**REFERENCES:** FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-C2-5001

MCSF-ATFP-5001

MCSF-C2-5002

---

**FAST-MAN-6001:** Conduct ground security operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 6.1.5.2.2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Operations meant to safeguard personnel, material, and facilities against espionage, sabotage, damage, and theft. This event includes site security, convoy operations, vehicle and personnel checks, and other appropriate measures as required.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit and an objective to safeguard from a hostile threat.

**STANDARD:** To secure an objective, personnel, and material from a hostile threat.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Move to objective using appropriate movement techniques.
2. Secure objective as required.
3. Conduct movement between areas as the situation dictates.
4. Conduct follow on ground security operations as required by the commanders intent and mission requirements.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
3. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-35.8 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
5. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-C2-5001	FAST-MAN-5001	FAST-MAN-5002
FAST-PS-5001	MCSF-C2-5001	MCSF-C2-5002
MCSF-MAN-5002	MCSF-MAN-5005	

---

**FAST-MAN-6002:** Operate in Urban Terrain

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3	MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4	MCT 6.1.8
-----------------	-----------------	-----------

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit and a mission to conduct operations in an urban environment.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Begin planning.
2. Conduct appropriate pre-combat preparations, rehearsals, checks, and inspections.
3. Task organize for urban operations.
4. Coordinate with adjacent, supporting, and attached units.
5. Conduct reconnaissance.
6. Incorporate rules of engagement (ROE).
7. Develop tactical control measures, routes, and urban specific factors and restrictions.
8. Determine/coordinate key terrain labeling.
9. Conduct movement and tactics in the four levels of urban terrain (building, street, subterranean, and air).
10. Establish target precedence, consider effects for all weapon systems, and assess collateral damage.
11. Establish the signal/marketing plan.
12. Isolate the objective.
13. Breach urban obstacles.
14. Gain a foothold in limited objectives.
15. Ensure weapons inside buildings have adequate space and ventilation for backblast (on upper floors, if possible, for long-range top shots).
16. Maintain situational awareness of units and factors relative to urban operations.
17. Conduct clearing and marking.
18. Complete actions on the objective.
19. Send and receive required reports.
20. Evacuate casualties, process detainees, and conduct logistic operations.
21. Issue fragmentary orders to units in preparation for follow-on missions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 12-10B.1 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-C2-5001 FAST-MAN-5002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**NWS-C2-6001:** Conduct planning

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3 MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3 MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4  
MCT 6.1.8

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The process that develops an order to direct actions and focuses subordinate activities toward accomplishing the mission.

**CONDITION:** Given commander's guidance and a higher headquarters operations order/plan.

**STANDARD:** To communicate the commander's intent, guidance, and decisions in a clear, useful form that is easily understood by those who must execute the order.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Determine time available.
2. Conduct Problem Framing.
3. Determine planning process (MCPP, R2P2, Hasty Planning, or other method).
4. Establish timeline for planning and preparation.
5. Issue Warning Order.
6. Create orders (OPORD, FRAGO, Decision Support Tools, etc.).
7. Issue orders.

8. Implement feedback mechanisms.
9. Coordinate planning with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting units.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** NWS-C2-7001

---

**NWS-PS-6001:** Control the limited area (LA)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 6.1.5.2.3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** As a permanently stationed force in Direct Support of Commander, Strategic Weapons Facility, control the physical environment of the LA in order to deny unauthorized access, theft, use, or sabotage of Strategic assets.

**CONDITION:** Given a SWF LA and a posted guard force

**STANDARD:** To maintain the Nuclear Weapons Security Standard in accordance with DODD 5210.41\_ Nuclear Weapons Security Manual.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct command and control.
2. Establish Interior Guard
3. Establish / Execute Reaction Force
4. React to a Security Alert

**REFERENCES:**

1. BNO 8126.1 General Guard Orders
2. DODD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual
3. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
4. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** NWS-C2-7001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-C2-5001	FAST-C2-5002	MCSF-MAN-5003
MCSF-MAN-5004	MCSF-MAN-5005	MCSF-PS-5001
NWS-MAN-5002	NWS-PS-5001	NWS-PS-5002
NWS-PS-5003		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**NWS-PS-6002:** Control a waterfront restricted area (WRA)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 6.1.5.2.3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** As a permanently stationed force in Direct Support of Commander, Strategic Weapons Facility, control the physical environment of the WRA (excluding entry into moored submarines) in order to deny unauthorized access, theft, use, or sabotage of Strategic assets.

**CONDITION:** Given a waterfront restricted area and a posted security force

**STANDARD:** To maintain the Nuclear Weapons Security Standard in accordance with DODD 5210.41\_ Nuclear Weapons Security Manual

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct command and control.
2. Establish interior guard
3. Establish reaction force
4. React to a security alert

**REFERENCES:**

1. DODD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual
2. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
3. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** NWS-C2-7001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-C2-5001	MCSF-C2-5002	MCSF-MAN-5003
MCSF-MAN-5004	MCSF-MAN-5005	MCSF-PS-5001
NWS-MAN-5002	NWS-PS-5001	NWS-PS-5002
NWS-PS-5003		

---

**NWS-PS-6003:** Control the explosive handling wharf (EHW)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3 MCT 6.1.8

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** As a permanently stationed force in direct support of Commander, Strategic Weapons Facility, control the physical environment of the EHW, to include the dockside handling building, and convoy route in order to deny unauthorized access, theft, use, or sabotage of Strategic assets.

**CONDITION:** Given an explosive handling wharf and a posted security force

**STANDARD:** To maintain the Nuclear Weapons Security Standard in accordance with DODD 5210.41\_ Nuclear Weapons Security Manual.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct command and control.
2. Clear the explosive handling wharf.
3. Control the explosive handling wharf.
4. Prevent unauthorized access to the explosive handling wharf via land and waterborne routes.
5. Establish interior guard.
6. Establish reaction force.
7. React to a security alert.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DODD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual
2. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
3. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** NWS-C2-7001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-C2-5001	MCSF-C2-5002	MCSF-MAN-5003
MCSF-MAN-5004	MCSF-MAN-5005	MCSF-MAN-5005
MCSF-PS-5001	NWS-MAN-5002	NWS-PS-5003
NWS-PS-5004	NWS-PS-5006	

---

**NWS-PS-6004:** Conduct recapture operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Security Force Personnel must be prepared to respond to any contingency involving the seizure of a nuclear weapons facility or nuclear weapons themselves.

**CONDITION:** Given MCSF unit and all required equipment

**STANDARD:** To recapture compromised strategic weapons on a military installation hosting a SWF.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Respond to security alert.
2. Isolate the objective.

- 3. Conduct an assault.
- 4. Secure the strategic weapon.

**REFERENCES:**

- 1. DOD 3150.8-M Nuclear Weapon Accident Response Procedures (NARP)
- 2. DoD S-5210.41M Nuclear Weapon Security Manual
- 3. SECNAVINST S8126

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: NWS-C2-7001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

MCSF-ATFP-5001	MCSF-ATFP-5002	MCSF-ATFP-5003
MCSF-C2-5001	MCSF-C2-5002	MCSF-MAN-5005
MCSF-PS-5001	NWS-MAN-5002	NWS-PS-5003
NWS-PS-5004	NWS-PS-5006	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	419 cartridges per Team
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	120 cartridges per Marine
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	60 cartridges per Team
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA: A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.



MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

5000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	6000	6-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	6001	6-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	6002	6-2
5000-LEVEL EVENTS . . . . .	6003	6-3

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

5000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**6000. PURPOSE.** Chapter 6 contains the 5000 level collective training events for the MCSF T&R manual.

**6001. EVENT CODING.** Events in this T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12-character, 3-field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one. This field represents the community. This chapter contains the following community codes:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
FAST	Fleet Antiterrorism Security Team
MCSF	Marine Corps Security Forces
NWS	Naval Weapons Security

b. Field two. This field represents the functional/duty area. This chapter contains the following functional/duty areas:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
ATFP	Antiterrorism Force Protection
C2	Command and Control
CBRN	Chemical Biological Radiological Nuclear
LOG	Logistics
MAN	Maneuver
PS	Physical Security

c. Field three. This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events. This chapter contains the following event levels:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
5000	Platoon Level

**6002. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

<b>Event Code</b>	<b>E-Coded</b>	<b>Event</b>
FAST-ATFP-5001	YES	Construct a barrier plan
FAST-C2-5001	YES	Conduct COC Operations (S/L)
FAST-C2-5002	YES	Conduct a deployment
FAST-MAN-5001	YES	Secure an objective
FAST-MAN-5002	NO	Operate in urban terrain (S/L)
FAST-MAN-5003	YES	Conduct embassy reinforcement
FAST-PS-5001	NO	Conduct expeditionary site security
MCSF-ATFP-5001	YES	Conduct force protection
MCSF-ATFP-5002	YES	Implement population control measures
MCSF-ATFP-5003	YES	Process detainees

MCSF-C2-5001	YES	Conduct adjacent unit coordination
MCSF-C2-5002	YES	Conduct command and control (S/L)
MCSF-CBRN-5001	YES	Operate in a CBRN environment
MCSF-MAN-5001	NO	Conduct a cordon and search
MCSF-MAN-5002	YES	Conduct mounted operations
MCSF-MAN-5003	YES	Defend an objective
MCSF-MAN-5004	YES	Execute an interior guard
MCSF-MAN-5005	YES	Employ Designated Marksman
MCSF-PS-5001	NO	Execute security sweep of the area
NWS-MAN-5001	NO	Conduct a mobile defense (S/L)
NWS-MAN-5002	NO	Conduct mounted operations (S/L)
NWS-PS-5001	NO	Conduct the interior guard
NWS-PS-5002	YES	Conduct Site Security
NWS-PS-5003	NO	Isolate the objective
NWS-PS-5004	NO	Clear an area
NWS-PS-5005	NO	Secure a Convoy Route
NWS-PS-5006	NO	Recapture strategic asset

### 6003. 5000-LEVEL EVENTS

**FAST-ATFP-5001:** Construct a barrier plan

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit, a mission, commander's intent, location to emplace obstacle(s), and resources.

**STANDARD:** To turn, block, fix, canalize, or disrupt personnel or equipment in accordance with the concept of operations and commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Analyze obstacle plan in accordance with mission planning.
2. Analyze engagement areas, battle positions, and weapons location.
3. Coordinate overwatch/security for obstacle construction.
4. Tie obstacles into natural/existing obstacles as required.
5. Emplace obstacles (wire, barriers, hedgehogs, ect.) as required.
6. Tie obstacles into overall defensive plan.

**REFERENCES:** FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** FAST-ATFP-6001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-4002

FAST-MAN-4004

MCSF-ATFP-4001

**FAST-C2-5001:** Conduct COC Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Independently deploying platoons requires a greater level of coordination and event tracking than a typical infantry platoon and as such require the staffing and running of a COC to meet mission requirements.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST platoon and a mission.

**STANDARD:** To integrate systems, personnel, and processes to support the assigned mission.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Maintain accountability of all personnel.
2. Receive and maintain record of all information and intelligence reporting.
3. Conduct battle tracking, pattern analysis, and information management.
4. Track unit equipment, logistics requirements, and coordinate resupply.
5. Identify security levels required by equipment type.
6. Establish equipment security.
7. Establish accountability procedures for equipment (equipment logs, ECR's, individual CMR's, etc.).
8. Assign equipment to authorized personnel.
9. Report/provide information to higher, adjacent, supporting, and other units.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCDP 5 Planning
2. MCO 3120.13 Policy for Marine Expeditionary Unit
3. NAVMC DIR 3000.18 Marine Corps Force Deployment Planning and Execution Process Manual

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-6001

FAST-C2-6001

FAST-MAN-6001

FAST-MAN-6002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	Y

**FAST-C2-5002:** Conduct a deployment

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.2.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST platoon, a deployment order, and embarkation equipment.

**STANDARD:** To move personnel and equipment from the APOE to the APOD in accordance with established timeline.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Coordinate with higher/adjacent/supporting units.
2. Conduct mission planning.
3. Task organize forces in accordance with mission requirements.
4. Coordinate administrative, medical, and clearance requirements as required.
5. Ensure unit cargo and equipment is prepared.
6. Ensure unit cargo and equipment is staged for movement.
7. Coordinate movement of unit cargo and equipment to APOE.
8. Coordinate the loading of unit cargo and equipment aboard aircraft.
9. Coordinate the embarkation of unit passengers aboard aircraft.
10. Conduct embarkation.
11. Conduct movement from point of entry.

**REFERENCES:**

1. AMC Affiliation Workbook 36-101, Vol 1 Equipment Preparation Course
2. AMC Affiliation Workbook 36-101, Vol 2 Airlift Planners Course
3. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
4. MCTP 13-10C Unit Embarkation Handbook
5. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-6001

FAST-CSS-6001

---

**FAST-MAN-5001:** Secure an objective

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** FAST platoons have the capability to conduct platoon sized offensive operations to gain or regain control of a building, area or facility within the capabilities of the unit; This does not in all cases require the FAST unit hold the objective to conduct follow on security operations. The FAST platoon conducts tactical movement and actions necessary to clear unauthorized personnel, check badges and identify/mark suspicious objects within the area to be secured. Utilization of external or attached elements is recommended to ensure complete security is established. This may be conducted in a permissive or hostile environment. This assessment will dictate the tactics used.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST platoon provided a mission, commander's intent, and an objective with an unknown or compromised security status.

**STANDARD:** To remove all threats from the objective while safeguarding any non-threat personnel and equipment inside; to return the objective to friendly force control.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct movement to the objective.
2. Isolate the objective.
3. Contain the objective.
4. Enter the objective area.
5. Clear the objective.
6. Identify/detain/remove unauthorized personnel.
7. Secure the objective.
8. Report to higher.
9. Prepare to conduct follow on security operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 12-10B.1 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** FAST-ATFP-6001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-4001	FAST-MAN-4002	FAST-MAN-4004
MCSF-MAN-4002		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup

Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**FAST-MAN-5002:** Operate in urban terrain (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Many operations conducted by FAST units will take place in an urban environment. The complexity of this environment dictates that units conduct proper planning and considerations for both offensive and defensive operations.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit and a mission.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Begin planning.
2. Conduct appropriate pre-combat preparations, rehearsals, checks, and inspections.
3. Task organize for urban operations.
4. Coordinate with adjacent, supporting, and attached units.
5. Conduct reconnaissance.
6. Incorporate rules of engagement (ROE).
7. Develop tactical control measures, routes, and urban specific factors and restrictions.
8. Determine/coordinate key terrain labeling.
9. Conduct movement and tactics in the four levels of urban terrain (building, street, subterranean, and air).
10. Establish target precedence, consider effects for all weapon systems, and assess collateral damage.
11. Establish the signal/marketing plan.
12. Isolate the objective.
13. Breach urban obstacles.
14. Gain a foothold in limited objectives.
15. Ensure weapons inside buildings have adequate space and ventilation for backblast (on upper floors, if possible, for long-range top shots).
16. Maintain situational awareness of units and factors relative to urban operations.
17. Conduct clearing and marking.
18. Complete actions on the objective.
19. Send and receive required reports.
20. Evacuate casualties, process detainees, and conduct logistic operations.
21. Issue fragmentary orders to units in preparation for follow-on missions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-6001                      FAST-MAN-6001                      FAST-MAN-6002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-4003                      MCSF-MAN-4001                      MCSF-PS-4004

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	I-TESS (Individual)	Marine Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

---

**FAST-MAN-5003:** Conduct embassy reinforcement

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** FAST units conduct operations to reinforce security of U.S. embassies, legations, and consulates to protect U.S. personnel and prevent the compromise of facilities.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit and a Department of State facility that requires security augmentation.

**STANDARD:** To secure Department of State facilities.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct Planning.
2. Conduct movement to the objective.
3. Establish and maintain 360 degree security.
4. Secure the Embassy.
5. Conduct threat vulnerability assessment and establish barrier plan if necessary.
6. Augment or reinforce existing ECP/VCP as required.
7. Establish initial reaction force.



8. Establish individual and roving posts.
9. Conduct position improvement as necessary.
10. Establish spaces for billeting, armory, medical, and COC.
11. Establish and implement wire and radio communications plan.
12. Establish interior guard.
13. Employ procedures for use of force.
14. React to a civil disturbance (hostile or non-hostile).
15. Establish a dedicated reaction force.
16. Establish a security alert team.
17. Employ detainee handling procedures.
18. Establish casualty/medical plan.
19. Develop and publish a fire plan sketch.
20. Conduct reinforcement rehearsals.
21. Conduct RAMS.
22. Conduct CBRN defense if applicable.
23. Conduct mass-casualty if applicable.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
3. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-35.8 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
5. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-4001	FAST-ATFP-4002	FAST-ATFP-4003
FAST-CBRN-4001	FAST-MAN-4004	MCSF-ATFP-4001
MCSF-ATFP-4002	MCSF-CSS-4001	MCSF-MAN-4002
MCSF-MAN-4003	MCSF-MAN-4004	MCSF-MAN-4005
MCSF-PS-4002	MCSF-PS-4003	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**FAST-PS-5001:** Conduct expeditionary site security

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1

MCT 6.1.1.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, designated guard force personnel, an area to be secured

**STANDARD:** To deny unauthorized access, theft, or destruction to designated assets.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct movement to the objective.
2. Establish and maintain 360 degree security.
3. Conduct security sweep of area.
4. Conduct threat vulnerability assessment and establish barrier plan if necessary.
5. Establish or reinforce existing ECP/VCP.
6. Maintain ECP/VCP
7. Establish Initial Reaction Force.
8. Position anti-armor and machinegun assets.
9. Establish DM positions.
10. Establish individual and roving posts.
11. Construct obstacles outside perimeter.
12. Conduct position improvement as necessary.
13. Establish spaces for billeting, armory, medical, and COC.
14. Establish and implement wire and radio communications plan.
15. Establish interior guard.
16. Employ procedures for use of force.
17. React to a civil disturbance (hostile or non-hostile).
18. Establish a dedicated reaction force.
19. Establish a Security Alert Team.
20. Employ Detainee Handling procedures
21. Establish casualty/medical plan.
22. Develop and publish a fire plan sketch.
23. Conduct reinforcement rehearsals.
24. Conduct RAMS.
25. Conduct CBRN defense if applicable.
26. Conduct mass-casualty if applicable.
27. Conduct debrief.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
3. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations
4. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** FAST-ATFP-6001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-4002

FAST-ATFP-4003

FAST-MAN-4003

FAST-MAN-4004

MCSF-ATFP-4001

MCSF-ATFP-4002

MCSF-CSS-4001

MCSF-MAN-4003

MCSF-MAN-4004

MCSF-MAN-4005  
MCSF-PS-4003

MCSF-PS-4001

MCSF-PS-4002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Expeditionary site security includes but is not limited to embassy reinforcement, maritime/pier site security, protection of naval vessels, or split site security operations.

---

**MCSF-ATFP-5001:** Conduct force protection

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1                      MCT 6.1.1.4                      MCT 6.1.5.2.3  
MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** A MCSF unit must be able to plan for and mitigate risks to friendly forces that can affect the unit's ability to execute their mission.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, a mission, and commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate risk to friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct Planning.
2. Determine hazards to the force.
3. Implement hazard mitigation.

4. Continually reassess.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDInst 2000.16 Antiterrorism (AT) Standards
2. MCO 3302.1D The Marine Corps Antiterrorism Program
3. NAVMC 2927 Antiterrorism/Force Protection Campaign Plan

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-6001                      FAST-C2-6001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-4001                      MCSF-CSS-4001

---

**MCSF-ATFP-5002:**    Implement population control measures

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4                      MCT 6.1.5.2.3                      MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:**    YES                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:**    6 months

**DESCRIPTION:**    Population control or civil disturbance operations may be required of a MCSF unit in order to maintain security at a specific location. Population control operations will be limited in scale due to the size of the MCSF unit.

**CONDITION:**    Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, commander's intent, and a civil disturbance in close proximity to the objective.

**STANDARD:**    To deescalate civil disturbance, mitigate threat to friendly forces, and maintain security of objective.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify civil disturbance or riot signs.
2. Provide over-watch of friendly forces.
3. Identify key leaders of civil disturbance.
4. Assemble control force.
5. Declare use of force.
6. Execute control force techniques.
7. Neutralize threat to friendly forces, utilizing maximum stand-off of less than lethal options.
8. Utilize riot control agents (RCA), if authorized.
9. Maintain security of friendly position.
10. Detain personnel as necessary.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DODD 3000.3-R Policy for Non-lethal Weapons
2. FM 3-22.40 Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Tactical Employment of Nonlethal Weapons
3. MCWP 3-33.2 CIVIL DISTURBANCES

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-6001 NWS-PS-6004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** MCSF-ATFP-4002

---

**MCSF-ATFP-5003:** Process detainees

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1 MCT 6.1.1.4 MCT 6.1.5.2.3  
MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given the apprehension of personnel during operations.

**STANDARD:** To ensure safe and expeditious handling of detainees in accordance with the laws of armed conflict.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Search detainees for weapons, ammunition, and other items that may pose a threat or provide intelligence value.
2. Tag detainees.
3. Photograph scenes of intelligence value.
4. Inventory all items removed and collect them in a zip lock bag.
5. Report personnel detained.
6. Move to detainee collection point.
7. Segregate detainees based on perceived status of authority or position.
8. Safeguard detainees.
9. Complete documentation.
10. Transfer detainees to higher headquarters or proper authorities as required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 4-12.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
2. MCWP 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-6001 FAST-C2-6001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** FAST-MAN-4003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Detainee kits

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** Role Players

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** The search should include all clothing on the individual, to include shoes. To ensure the safety and security of the capturing force, do not exempt anything from search. Tag detainees with a DD form 2745 (Capture Tag) or a field-expedient capture tag that includes the following information: date and time of capture, capturing unit, location of capture (grid coordinates), special circumstances of capture (how the person was captured, if the detainee resisted, if the detainee surrendered, and so forth), did the person have weapons on them at the time of capture, list all documents and other items on their person at the time of capture. Deliver all documents/pocket litter captured with the detainee(s) in order to assist interrogators. During initial screening, identify leaders and segregate them from the remainder of the population.

---

**MCSF-C2-5001:** Conduct adjacent unit coordination

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1	MCT 1.2.4	MCT 6.1.1.4
MCT 6.1.5.2.3	MCT 6.1.7	

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit operating in an area with other friendly forces.

**STANDARD:** To disseminate vital information and increase situational awareness.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify adjacent units and agencies.
2. Establish communication.
3. Establish roles and responsibilities.
4. Identify gaps or shortfalls.
5. Request support.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCDP 6 Command and Control
2. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-6001	FAST-C2-6001	FAST-MAN-6001
NWS-PS-6001	NWS-PS-6002	NWS-PS-6003
NWS-PS-6004		

---

**MCSF-C2-5002:** Conduct command and control (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1	MCT 1.2.4	MCT 6.1.1.4
MCT 6.1.5.2.3	MCT 6.1.7	

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, a mission, and the commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver and sustain operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Establish main effort.
3. Establish tactical control measures.
4. Establish signal plan.
5. Position leaders to best command unit actions.
6. Prepare for combat.
7. Track subordinate, higher, adjacent, supporting, and other actions.
8. Issue frag orders as needed.
9. Report/provide information to higher, adjacent, supporting, and other units.
10. Assess the situation.
11. Prepare for follow on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
3. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations
4. NTTP 3-07.11 Maritime Interception Operations
5. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-6001	FAST-C2-6001	FAST-CSS-6001
FAST-MAN-6001	NWS-PS-6001	NWS-PS-6002
NWS-PS-6003	NWS-PS-6004	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**MCSF-CBRN-5001:** Operate in a CBRN environment

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, an order, and a CBRN threat.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Conduct tactical logistics.
3. Prepare for combat.
4. Conduct CBRN reporting.
5. Conduct operations in a contaminated environment.
6. Conduct decontamination.
7. Conduct consolidation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCWP 3-37.2 Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for NBC Protection
3. MCWP 3-37.3 CBRN Decontamination

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** FAST-ATFP-6001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** FAST-CBRN-4001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Planning will include the following:

1. CBRN threat analysis.
2. Plan for alternate tactical control measures/routes.
3. Plan for tracking and handling of CBRN casualties and contaminated equipment.
4. Prepare CBRN Defense.
5. Plan for CBRN logistics to include CBRN defense equipment, medical supplies, decontamination supplies.
6. Plan for security of incident site until returned to pre-incident



status.

---

**MCSF-MAN-5001:** Conduct a cordon and search

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, attachments, a mission, commander's intent, a location, populace, and structures.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent, while minimizing collateral damage.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Task organize.
4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Prepare for operations.
7. Execute command and control.
8. Move to the objective.
9. Establish inner and outer cordon to isolate the objective.
10. Execute actions on the objective.
11. Conduct information collection.
12. Consolidate.
13. Conduct accountability.
14. Conduct withdrawal.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 12-10B.1 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
2. MCWP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling
3. MCWP 3-02 Insurgencies and Countering Insurgencies

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-4001

FAST-MAN-4002

MCSF-MAN-4001

NWS-PS-4002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Compared to a raid, this event is less kinetic, oriented more on protecting the people rather than the raid which is oriented on destruction of the enemy or enemy capabilities.
2. Cordon and search specific planning considerations, means of movement, task organization {search, support, security}, withdrawal/MACO

---

**MCSF-MAN-5002:** Conduct mounted operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, a mission, commander's intent, and equipment in an uncertain environment.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Issue the order.
3. Prepare for combat.
4. Conduct route reconnaissance.
5. Provide route security.
6. Establish route over-watch.
7. Conduct immediate actions.
8. Execute tactical logistics as required.
9. Submit reports.
10. Be prepared to conduct follow-on missions.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-6001

NWS-PS-6004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-MAN-4003

NWS-MAN-4002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

DODIC

A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip

A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer  
M856 Linked

B519 Cartridge, 40mm Target Practice M781

QUANTITY

20 cartridges per  
weapon

120 cartridges per  
weapon

3 cartridges per  
weapon

B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute  
M583/M583A1  
G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8

3 cartridges per  
weapon  
1 grenades per Marine

---

**MCSF-MAN-5003:** Defend an objective

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST platoon, provided a mission, commanders intent, and an objective to secure and defend. The objective may or may not be in the control of the U.S. Government and may require initial actions to ensure the security of the area.

**STANDARD:** To deny unauthorized access, theft, or destruction to designated facilities.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Conduct movement to the objective.
3. Secure the objective.
4. Establish and maintain security.
5. Establish fields of fire.
6. Conduct work in accordance with priorities and timeline.
7. Establish sectors of fire for subordinate, supporting, and attached units.
8. Supervise activity at all levels to ensure effective employment of weapon systems, safety, and the geometry of fires.
9. Emplace obstacles.
10. Conduct threat vulnerability assessment and establish barrier plan if necessary.
11. Establish or reinforce existing ECP/VCP.
12. Establish designated marksman positions.
13. Establish individual and roving posts.
14. Conduct position improvement.
15. Establish spaces for billeting, armory, medical, and COC.
16. Implement wire and radio communications plan.
17. Establish interior guard.
18. Employ use of force procedures
19. React to a civil disturbances (hostile or non-hostile).
20. Employ detainee handling procedures.
21. Establish a medical plan.
22. Develop a fire plan sketch.
23. Conduct reinforcement rehearsals.
24. Conduct random access security measures.
25. React to security alerts.
26. Conduct medical triage and casualty evacuation as required.
27. Prepare to operate in a CBRN environment.
28. Prepare to operate a split site or defend multiple objectives.
29. Conduct battle hand-over and/or relief in place.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations
4. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

NWS-PS-6001	NWS-PS-6002	NWS-PS-6003
NWS-PS-6004		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-4004	MCSF-ATFP-4001	MCSF-MAN-4004
---------------	----------------	---------------

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Objectives include but are not limited to individual building or facilities, maritime/pier site security, protection of naval vessels, or Naval bases and installations. All objectives must be within the capability of the platoon to defend. This task may entail split site security of more than one objective. Objectives will be mutually supporting and accomplish the platoon's overall mission.

---

**MCSF-MAN-5004:** Execute an interior guard

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1	MCT 6.1.1.4	MCT 6.1.5.2.3
MCT 6.1.7		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The interior guard will be established consisting of alert, react and reserve forces capable of a sustainable, indefinite rotation and able to react to any security situation that should arise in accordance with platoon SOPs. Marines will know, understand, and enforce all general and special orders and be knowledgeable of their guard chain of command.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, guard orders, SOP's and references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring no unauthorized access, theft, or destruction of government property.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish security posts.
2. Utilize reporting procedures.
3. Utilize Escalation of Force (EOF) procedures in accordance with governing rules of engagement.
4. Conduct guard mount.
5. Establish a watch rotation.
6. Establish a reactionary force and reserve force.
7. Task organize personnel and equipment.
8. Inspect posts.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
2. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

NWS-PS-6001

NWS-PS-6002

NWS-PS-6003

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** MCSF-PS-4002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**MCSF-MAN-5005:** Employ Designated Marksman

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Designated marksmen are utilized by MCSF units to provide observation and precision fires in support of operations.

**CONDITION:** Given an operations order, trained designated marksman team with weapons and equipment.

**STANDARD:** To provide reconnaissance, surveillance, and precision fires.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish security.
2. Determine final firing position.
3. Occupy position.
4. Continuously camouflage.
5. Create range cards for primary/supplementary positions.
6. Observe and report.
7. Execute precision fires as required.
8. Withdraw from position.
9. Conduct debrief.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.222 U.S. Army Special Forces Sniper Training and Employment
2. MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-6001	NWS-PS-6001	NWS-PS-6002
NWS-PS-6003	NWS-PS-6004	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** MCSF-MAN-4004

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	60 per Team

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17560 Sniper Field-Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Conducted in 2 man teams.
2. This event can be trained to standard without ammunition.

---

**MCSF-PS-5001:** Execute security sweep of the area

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1	MCT 6.1.1.4	MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3
MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4	MCT 6.1.7	

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Mission requires that an area, vessel, or facility be secured. The guard force conducts tactical movement and actions necessary to clear unauthorized personnel, and identify/mark suspicious objects within the area to be secured. Utilization of external or attached elements are recommended - such as EOD or MWD to ensure complete security is established.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit

**STANDARD:** To ensure no potential security threats exist within the designated area.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct a sweep of the area to be secured
2. Identify/detain / remove unauthorized personnel
3. Identify possible security threats
4. Neutralize any security threats

**REFERENCES:**

1. DODD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

NWS-PS-6001	NWS-PS-6002	NWS-PS-6003
NWS-PS-6004		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-4001	FAST-MAN-4002	MCSF-MAN-4002
NWS-RTT-4001		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A065 Ctg, 5.56mm Military Pack Short Range	20 per
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	100 per
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 per
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**NWS-MAN-5001:** Conduct a mobile defense (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit with an order to defend a sector, attachments, equipment, and commander's guidance.

**STANDARD:** To achieve destruction of the enemy by allowing it to become vulnerable in its attack and then defeating it through decisive offensive action(s) by a striking force.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning, inspections, and preparation
2. Task organize
3. Clear area and establish initial security
4. Identify primary and alternate positions
5. Establish fields of fire
6. Coordinate and supervise at all levels to ensure effective employment of weapon systems, safety, and the geometry of fires
7. Establish communications and signals plan
8. Establish and rehearse final protective fires, counterattack plan, and defensive battle drills
9. Establish alert postures
10. Conduct continuing actions
11. Send and receive required reports

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCTP 3-10A Marine Infantry Battalion

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** NWS-MAN-4002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	0	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range  
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

This event can be trained/augmented through the use of the following enablers:

LIVE, SESAMS, MILES, Role Players  
VIRTUAL/CONSTRUCTIVE - DVTE (VBS2,CAN)



---

**NWS-MAN-5002:** Conduct mounted operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, vehicles mounted with machineguns, commander's intent, a scheme of maneuver, required equipment, and ammunition.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver with tactically sound movement utilizing tactical military vehicles in an open or restricted environment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions
2. Conduct planning
3. Issue/receive the order
4. Prepare for combat operations.
5. Screen forward, flank, or rear of a moving unit
6. Utilize visual/radio communications
7. Maintain all around security
8. Execute tactical logistics as required
9. Execute contingency plans as required
10. React to threats
11. Conduct follow-on missions

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Crew-Served Machine Guns
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

NWS-PS-6001	NWS-PS-6002	NWS-PS-6003
NWS-PS-6004		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** FAST-MAN-4002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	32	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. The full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, and littoral.

---

**NWS-PS-5001:** Conduct the interior guard

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Interior guard is inherent to all site security missions. When walking post, touring posts, or standing a watch, guard personnel are required to ensure that all guard orders and special orders are strictly adhered to for the protection of personnel and property. Marines will know, understand, and enforce all general and special orders and be knowledgeable of their guard chain of command.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit

**STANDARD:** Ensuring no unauthorized access, theft, or destruction of government property.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Posts are established.
2. Employ deadly force when required.
3. Conduct Guard Mount.
4. Establish watch rotation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
2. NAVMC 2691A Interior Guard

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

NWS-PS-6001

NWS-PS-6002

NWS-PS-6003

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-PS-4002

MCSF-PS-4003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**NWS-PS-5002:** Conduct Site Security

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** As a permanently stationed force in direct support of Commander, Strategic Weapons Facility, Security Force personnel conduct site security.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, designated guard force personnel, and an area to be secured.

**STANDARD:** To maintain the Nuclear Weapons Security standard.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Maintain initial 360 degree security.
2. Execute the barrier plan.
3. Maintain access control.
4. Position anti-armor and/or machinegun assets.
5. Establish DM positions as necessary.
6. Establish individual and roving posts.
7. Execute communications plan.
8. Maintain a guard force rotation.
9. Establish a dedicated back-up force.
10. Conduct detainee handling.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DODD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
4. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations
5. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations
6. SSPINST S-8126

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

NWS-PS-6001

NWS-PS-6002

NWS-PS-6003

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-MAN-4003

MCSF-MAN-4004

MCSF-MAN-4005

MCSF-PS-4002

MCSF-PS-4003

NWS-PS-4003

---

**NWS-PS-5003:** Isolate the objective

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit designated guard force personnel, with all required equipment.

**STANDARD:** To prevent the Threat from entering or exiting the area.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Respond to a security alert
2. Position forces to cover the objective area
3. Establish blocking positions as necessary
4. Conduct reporting

**REFERENCES:**

1. DODD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

NWS-PS-6001	NWS-PS-6002	NWS-PS-6003
NWS-PS-6004		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** MCSF-PS-4001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	419 cartridges per Team
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	60 cartridges per Team
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	60 cartridges per Team
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	4 charges per Marine

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

---

**NWS-PS-5004:** Clear an area

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3	MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4
-----------------	-----------------

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Mission requires that an area, vessel, or facility be secured. The guard force conducts tactical movement and actions necessary to clear unauthorized personnel and identify/mark suspicious objects within the area to be secure. Utilization of external or attached elements are recommended such as Explosive Ordnance Disposal (EOD) or Military Working Dogs (MWD) to ensure complete security is established.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, designated guard force personnel, with all required equipment.

**STANDARD:** To ensure no potential security threats exist within the designated area in accordance with DODD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Clear the area to be secured.
2. Identify possible security threats.
3. Neutralize any security threats.
4. Identify/ apprehend/remove unauthorized personnel.

**REFERENCES:** FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** NWS-PS-6004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-MAN-4002                      NWS-MAN-4001                      NWS-RTT-4001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A065 Ctg, 5.56mm Military Pack Short Range	20 rounds per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	100 rounds per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 rounds per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

---

**NWS-PS-5005:** Secure a Convoy Route

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The guard force conducts tactical movement and actions necessary to clear unauthorized personnel and identify/mark suspicious objects within the convoy route. Utilization of external or attached elements is recommended such as EOD or MWD to ensure complete security is established.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, designated guard force personnel, with all required equipment.

**STANDARD:** To ensure no potential security threats exists within the designated route in accordance with DODD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish Control of the Convoy Route.
2. Identify/detain/remove unauthorized personnel.
3. Identify possible security threats.
4. Neutralize any security threats.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoD S-5210.41M Nuclear Weapon Security Manual
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-4003

NWS-MAN-4002

---

**NWS-PS-5006:** Recapture strategic asset

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** In the event of strategic assets becoming compromised, MCSF Bn has the responsibility to execute offensive operations in order to regain positive control.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, designated guard force personnel, with all required equipment.

**STANDARD:** To gain positive control of strategic asset.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Movement to objective area.
2. Isolate the objective.
3. Enter the objective area.
4. Clear the objective.
5. Secure the objective.

6. Report to higher command.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoD S-5210.41M Nuclear Weapon Security Manual
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. MCRP 12-10B.1 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
4. NTTP 3-07.11 Maritime Interception Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** NWS-PS-6004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** MCSF-PS-4001

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Reference AUC/CQB student handbook

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 7

4000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	7000	7-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	7001	7-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	7002	7-2
4000- LIST OF EVENTS. . . . .	7003	7-3



MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 7

4000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**7000. PURPOSE.** Chapter 7 contains the 4000 level collective training events for the MCSF T&R manual.

**7001. EVENT CODING.** Events in this T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12-character, 3-field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one. This field represents the community. This chapter contains the following community codes:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
FAST	Fleet Antiterrorism Security Team
MCSF	Marine Corps Security Force
NWS	Naval Weapons Security

b. Field two. This field represents the functional/duty area. This chapter contains the following functional/duty areas:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
ATFP	Antiterrorism Force Protection
CBRN	Chemical Biological Radiological Nuclear
CSS	Combat Service Support
MAN	Maneuver
PS	Physical Security
RTT	Recapture Tactics Team

c. Field three. This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events. This chapter contains the following event levels:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
5000	Platoon Level

**7002. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

Event Code	E-Coded	Event
FAST-ATFP-4001	NO	Perform Random Antiterrorism Measures (RAMs)
FAST-ATFP-4002	YES	Conduct ECP/VCP operations
FAST-ATFP-4003	NO	Detain personnel (S/L)
FAST-CBRN-4001	NO	Conduct Chemical, Biological, Radioactive, and Nuclear (CBRN) decontamination
FAST-MAN-4001	NO	Contain an objective
FAST-MAN-4002	NO	Isolate an objective
FAST-MAN-4003	NO	Conduct patrolling operations (S/L)
FAST-MAN-4004	NO	Conduct a defense (S/L)

MCSF-ATFP-4001	NO	Construct wire obstacles
MCSF-ATFP-4002	NO	Implement population control measures
MCSF-CSS-4001	NO	Conduct casualty evacuation
MCSF-MAN-4001	NO	Conduct a cordon and search
MCSF-MAN-4002	NO	Clear an objective (S/L)
MCSF-MAN-4003	NO	Conduct motorized operations (S/L)
MCSF-MAN-4004	YES	React to a security alert
MCSF-MAN-4005	YES	Conduct guard mount
MCSF-PS-4001	NO	Establish a cordon
MCSF-PS-4002	YES	Execute the interior guard
MCSF-PS-4003	NO	Conduct guard mount
MCSF-PS-4004	NO	Conduct patrolling operations
NWS-MAN-4001	NO	React to an engagement (S/L)
NWS-MAN-4002	NO	Conduct mounted operations
NWS-PS-4001	NO	Recapture Strategic asset
NWS-PS-4002	NO	Establish a cordon
NWS-PS-4003	YES	React to a security alert
NWS-RTT-4001	NO	Clear an exclusion structure (S/L)

### 7003. 4000- LIST OF EVENTS

**FAST-ATFP-4001:** Perform Random Antiterrorism Measures (RAMs)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Random implementation of additional physical security measures, FPCON increases, and operations in order to portray a robust security posture, prevent identification of security patterns, and deter terrorist acts.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit, a commander's intent, and a secure location.

**STANDARD:** To prevent identification of security patterns and deter terrorist acts.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Coordinate with adjacent units.
2. Implement additional FPCON measures
3. Implement additional physical security measures.
4. Implement change in op-tempo.
5. Debrief.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDInst 2000.16 Antiterrorism (AT) Standards
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-5003

MCSF-ATFP-5001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-MAN-3002

MCSF-MAN-3003

---

**FAST-ATFP-4002:** Conduct ECP/VCP operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Entry control points are established to control the flow of vehicles and personnel into and out of a secured area. Guard personnel must have knowledge of the different responsibilities executed at an Entry Control Point (ECP). Physical geometry and site security layout, ROE and local traffic laws of host nations may dictate the extent of a unit's ECP operations. Proper coordination must take place with all adjacent and supporting organizations to ensure the most effective ECP construction and implementation. Additional use of physical barriers, channeling devices, technical devices, Military Working Dogs (MWD), and host nation translators or interpreters are recommended assets while conducting these missions.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit, a mission, and commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To prevent unauthorized personnel, contraband or vehicles from entering or exiting the designated area.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Coordinate with adjacent units.
3. Establish search, security, and overwatch areas with stand-off distances.
4. Establish warning signs and signals IAW ROE; employ interpreters.
5. Establish the canalization zone to force movement into the checkpoint.
6. Establish a turning or deceleration zone to slow vehicles, if required.
7. Establish search area for vehicles/personnel.
8. Establish escalation of force criteria and triggers.
9. Search personnel and vehicles separately and sequentially.
10. Handle Detainees, if required.
11. Report as required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
2. MCRP 12-10B.1 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
3. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-5001

FAST-MAN-5003

FAST-PS-5001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-ATFP-3001

MCSF-MAN-3002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**EQUIPMENT:**

As applicable:  
1. Technical Kits.  
2. Spike Strips.  
3. Metal Detector.  
4. EOF Kits.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Plan for search of females given cultural factors.
2. Integrate additional assets (working dogs, female Marines, technological enhancements).
3. If possible, ensure integration with local or host-nation guard force.
4. Search area needs to be placed out of view (if possible) and conducted by minimum amount of personnel necessary.

---

**FAST-ATFP-4003:** Detain personnel (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit and an order.

**STANDARD:** To ensure safe and expeditious handling of detainees in accordance with the rules of engagement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Search detainees for weapons, ammunition, and any other items that may provide potential intelligence value.
2. Record initial findings.
3. Tag detainees.
4. Photograph scenes of intelligence value.
5. Secure all items removed from detainees.
6. Report personnel detained.
7. Transfer detainees to a collection point.
8. Segregate detainees based on perceived status of authority or position.
9. Safeguard detainees.
10. Complete detainee documentation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCRP 4-12.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-5003 MCSF-ATFP-5003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	0	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Detainee kits

**MATERIAL:** Weapons

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** Role Players

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** The search should include all clothing on the individual, to include shoes. To ensure the safety and security of the capturing force, do not exempt anything from search. Recording initial findings follows the need to photograph, sketch, witness statements and the details of the detainee and related items found. Tag detainees with a DD form 2745 (Capture Tag) or a field-expedient capture tag that includes the following information: date and time of capture, capturing unit, location of capture (grid coordinates), special circumstances of capture (how the person was captured, if the detainee resisted, if the detainee surrendered, and so forth), did the person have weapons on them at the time of capture, list all documents and other items on their person at the time of capture. Deliver all documents/pocket litter captured with the detainee(s) in order to assist interrogators. During initial screening, identify leaders and segregate them from the remainder of the population.

---

**FAST-CBRN-4001:** Conduct Chemical, Biological, Radioactive, and Nuclear (CBRN) decontamination

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** A unit operating in an area with CBRN contamination will need to replace its individual protective equipment and remove contamination from individual equipment and weapons on a routine basis to continue its mission.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit, an actual/simulated CBRN environment, a complete M-50 Joint Service General Purpose Mask with carrier, a complete set of CBRN Individual Protective Equipment, a service weapon, individual field equipment, SL-3 complete detection and decontamination equipment, and a checklist while at MOPP-4.

**STANDARD:** To remove and prevent the spread or transfer of contamination.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Locate a clean area, upwind, which provides concealment from observation.
2. Decontaminate service weapons.
3. Decontaminate individual field equipment.
4. Don CBRN individual protective equipment.
5. Don replacement CBRN individual protective equipment.
6. Don individual field equipment.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
2. MCWP 3-37.2 Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for NBC Protection

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-5003

MCSF-CBRN-5001

---

**FAST-MAN-4001:** Contain an objective

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** FAST units must be prepared to contain an objective prior to decisive actions. Contain implies an inner cordon and the ability of the FAST unit to prevent enemy withdrawal from the objective or allow no one to interfere with the assault force. This is a task normally reserved for the support unit when the platoon is task organized into assault, support, security. Containment can occur by observation, coverage by fire, blocking egress routes, designated marksman use, or a combination of all of these.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit, provided a mission, commander's intent, and an objective.

**STANDARD:** To prevent threats from exiting the objective area and to provide detailed reporting on the objective.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Task organize forces.
2. Position forces to cover the objective area by fire and observation.
3. Assign sectors of fire and observation.
4. Establish blocking positions as necessary.
5. Integrate with the outer cordon positions as the situation permits, or provide own security.
6. Conduct reporting.

**REFERENCES:** FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-5001

MCSF-MAN-5001

NWS-PS-5001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-MAN-3002

MCSF-MAN-3009

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**FAST-MAN-4002:** Isolate an objective

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Upon arrival at a site with no known security personnel, one element within the FAST platoon will have to provide outer security while the other elements execute their tasks. The outer cordon may consist of vehicles, blocking positions or both. The cordon will be focused on preventing interference with the FAST mission on main avenues of approach and will also function to keep personnel out of the objective area.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit, provided a mission, commander's intent, and an objective.

**STANDARD:** To prevent vehicles or personnel from entering the objective area or interfering with the platoon mission.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Task organize forces.
2. Establish security or blocking positions.
3. Establish fields of fire, position crew served weapons down main avenues of approach.
4. Security element commander confirms the element's positions.
5. Conduct Reporting.
6. Conduct EOF measure IAW ROE.
7. Prevent interference with the platoon mission from outside the objective.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCRP 3-30.5 Multi-service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Cordon and Search Operations
3. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-5001

MCSF-MAN-5001

NWS-PS-5001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-MAN-3002

MCSF-MAN-3009

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**



**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**FAST-MAN-4003:** Conduct patrolling operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3 MCT 6.1.8

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized FAST unit and an order.

**STANDARD:** To support the defense of an objective and spoil potential attacks.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct orders process.
2. Issue patrol order.
3. Conduct rehearsals.
4. Conduct PCC/PCIs.
5. Depart friendly lines.
6. Move in assigned formation.
7. Move as a base unit.
8. Maintain contact with the base unit.
9. Comply with tactical control measures.
10. Provide security in assigned sectors.
11. Execute immediate actions.
12. Return to friendly lines.
13. Conduct debrief.

**REFERENCES:** MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-5002 FAST-PS-5001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-MAN-3002  
MCSF-MAN-3008

MCSF-MAN-3004  
MCSF-MAN-3009

MCSF-MAN-3005

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	8	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	40 per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**FAST-MAN-4004:** Conduct a defense (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4                      MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The objective may or may not be in the control of the U.S. Government and may require initial actions to ensure the security of the area.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit, provided a mission, commander's intent, and an objective.

**STANDARD:** To deny unauthorized access, theft, or destruction to designated facilities.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Conduct movement to the objective.
3. Conduct security sweep of area.
4. Establish and maintain 360 degree security.
5. Establish fields of fire.
6. Conduct work in accordance with priorities and timeline.
7. Establish and mark sectors of fire for subordinate, supporting, and attached units.
8. Coordinate and supervise at all levels to ensure effective employment of weapon systems, safety, and the geometry of fires.

9. Emplace obstacles.
10. Conduct threat vulnerability assessment and establish barrier plan if necessary.
11. Establish or reinforce existing ECP/VCP.
12. Establish DM positions.
13. Establish individual and roving posts.
14. Conduct position improvement as necessary.
15. Establish spaces for billeting, armory, medical, and COC.
16. Establish and implement wire and radio communications plan.
17. Establish interior guard.
18. Employ procedures for use of force.
19. React to a civil disturbance (hostile or non-hostile).
20. Employ Detainee Handling procedures.
21. Establish casualty/medical plan.
22. Develop and publish a fire plan sketch.
23. Conduct RAMS.
24. React to security alerts as applicable.
25. Conduct medical triage and casualty evacuation as required.
26. Prepare to operate in a CBRN environment.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
3. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations
4. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-5001	FAST-MAN-5001	FAST-MAN-5003
FAST-PS-5001	MCSF-MAN-5003	MCSF-MAN-5005

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-ATFP-3002	MCSF-MAN-3002	MCSF-MAN-3003
MCSF-MAN-3009		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup

Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Objectives include but are not limited to individual building or facilities, maritime/pier site security, protection of naval vessels, or Naval bases and installations. The section or squad may operate a split site defensive operation in support of the platoon mission, or may conduct independent defensive operations disassociated from its parent unit.

---

**MCSF-ATFP-4001:** Construct wire obstacles

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1	MCT 6.1.1.4	MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2
MCT 6.1.7		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, commander's intent, location to emplace the obstacle(s), and resources.

**STANDARD:** To turn, block, fix, canalize, or disrupt personnel or equipment in accordance with the concept of operations and commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Coordinate security for obstacle construction.
2. Tie wire obstacles into existing obstacles.
3. Emplace wire obstacles as required.
4. Tie obstacles into overall defensive plan.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-5001	FAST-MAN-5001	FAST-MAN-5003
FAST-PS-5001	MCSF-MAN-5003	

---

**MCSF-ATFP-4002:** Implement population control measures

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1	MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2	MCT 6.1.7
--------------	-----------------	-----------

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Riot Control or civil disturbance operations may be required of a MCSF unit in order to maintain security at a specific location. Population control measures will be limited in scale, due to the size of the MCSF unit.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, commander's intent, civil disturbance in close proximity to the objective.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate threat to friendly force or assets.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify the presence of a civil disturbance.
2. Provide over-watch of friendly forces.
3. Identify key leaders involved in the civil disturbance.
4. Assemble a control force.
5. Declare use of force.
6. Execute control force techniques.
7. Neutralize threats to friendly forces, utilizing maximum stand-off and less-than lethal weapon systems.
8. Utilize riot control agents (RCA), if authorized.
9. Maintain security of friendly position.
10. Detain personnel as necessary.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DODD 3000.3-R Policy for Non-lethal Weapons
2. MCWP 3-33.2 CIVIL DISTURBANCES
3. NAVMC 3500.72A Non-Lethal Weapons (NLW) Training and Readiness (T&R) Manual
4. TRADOC PAMP. 525-73 Non-lethal Capabilities in Army Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-5003                      FAST-PS-5001                      MCSF-ATFP-5002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA31 Cartridge, 12 Gauge Rubber Fin Stabilized Non-Lethal	5 cartridges per Marine
AA52 12GA Cartridge Crowd Dispersal Nonlethal (M1013)	5 cartridges per Marine
BA07 Ctg, 40mm Form Rubber Baton Non-Lethal	5 cartridges per Marine
BA08 Ctg, 40mm Form Rubber Baton Non-Lethal	5 cartridges per Marine
GG04 Grenade, Rubber Ball Non-Lethal 9590	3 grenades per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup

Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Ammunition will only be issued to designated Marines in the munitions team and soft base-line.

---

**MCSF-CSS-4001:** Conduct casualty evacuation

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit conducting a mission when casualties are incurred.

**STANDARD:** To treat, evacuate, and track casualties in a timely manner with minimal interruption to the mission.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Move casualties to safe area.
2. Establish security.
3. Conduct triage.
4. Provide care.
5. Report casualties.
6. Move casualty to link-up point.
7. Coordinate evacuation transport.

**REFERENCES:** FM 4-02.4 Medical Platoon Leader's Handbook Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** FAST-PS-5001

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** MCSF-ATFP-3002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**MCSF-MAN-4001:** Conduct a cordon and search

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, a mission, commander's intent, a location, populace, and structures,

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent, while minimizing collateral damage.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Task organize.
4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Prep for operations.
7. Execute command and control.
8. Move to the objective.
9. Establish inner and outer cordon to isolate the objective.
10. Execute actions on the objective.
11. Conduct information collection.
12. Consolidate.
13. Conduct accountability.
14. Conduct withdrawal.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling
2. MCWP 3-02 Insurgencies and Countering Insurgencies
3. MCWP 3-35.8 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
4. NAVMC 3500.44\_ Infantry T&R Manual

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-5002

MCSF-MAN-5001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Compared to a raid, this event is less kinetic, oriented more on protecting the people rather than the raid which is oriented on destruction of the enemy or enemy capabilities.
2. Cordon and search specific planning considerations, means of movement, task org {search, support, security}, withdrawal/MACO.

**MCSF-MAN-4002:** Clear an objective (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** MCSF units can conduct limited offensive actions in a permissive or non-permissive environment that will allow them to secure a platoon sized objective. Clear implies the use of close quarters battle techniques at the squad level as an assault unit to clear an objective while also handling non-combatants and casualties. In a permissive environment, the FAST platoon conducts tactical movement and actions necessary to clear unauthorized personnel, check badges and identify/mark suspicious objects within the area to be cleared.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, a mission, commander's intent, and an objective.

**STANDARD:** To regain control of the structure, conduct marshalling area actions, and strongpoint the objective for follow on security missions as required.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning and pre-combat actions.
2. Conduct adjacent and/or supported unit coordination if applicable.
3. Move to the objective.
4. Conduct the breach if required.
5. Make entry into the structure.
6. Establish a foothold.
7. Clear the structure.
8. Identify/detain/remove unauthorized personnel.
9. Secure the structure.
10. Report to higher.
11. Conduct turnover.
12. Prepare for follow on mission (as necessary).

**REFERENCES:** NAVMC 3500.44\_ Infantry T&R Manual

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-5001

FAST-MAN-5003

FAST-PS-5001

NWS-PS-5004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-MAN-3001

MCSF-MAN-3006

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

SIMULATED

SUITABILITY

SIMULATOR

UNIT OF MEASURE

HOURS

PM



Yes                      S/L                      IIT                      Squad Hours                      0                      Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	90 per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 per Marine
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	10 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**MCSF-MAN-4003:** Conduct motorized operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1                      MCT 6.1.1.4                      MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2  
MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit, a mission, commander's intent, and tactical vehicles with crew served weapons and vehicle communication gear.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver and conduct movement in tactical vehicles in open or restricted terrain.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Prepare a vehicle for operations.
3. Conduct turn blocking and danger area procedures.
4. React to a vehicle roll over.
5. Defend against IEDs.
6. Conduct vehicle recovery.
7. Conduct applicable IA drills (sniper, complex ambush).
8. Conduct mounted land navigation.
9. Employ current technology and equipment (comm, BFT, ICE, CREW).
10. Employ crew-served weapons for motorized platforms.
11. Employ EOF procedures as required.
12. Submit all required reports to higher and adjacent headquarters.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

2. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-5003	FAST-PS-5001	MCSF-MAN-5002
NWS-PS-5002	NWS-PS-5005	

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-ATFP-3002	MCSF-MAN-3004	MCSF-MAN-3005
MCSF-MAN-3007	MCSF-MAN-3009	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	8	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	20 per weapon
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M856 Linked	120 per weapon
B519 Cartridge, 40mm Target Practice M781	3 per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute M583/M583A1	3 per weapon
G930 Grenade, Hand Smoke HC AN-M8	1 per vehicle
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	1 per vehicle
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Cluster M159	1 per vehicle
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green Star Cluster M125A1	1 per vehicle

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Convoy battle drills include but are not limited to: vehicle breakdown and recovery, bump plan, enemy contact, counter-mobility, target precedence and engagement criteria, counter/reaction to IED, casualty evacuation, break in contact, vehicle catch-up, security halts, and detainee handling.

**MCSF-MAN-4004:** React to a security alert

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1	MCT 6.1.1.4	MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2
MCT 6.1.7		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** A security alert is announced when a possible threat is perceived in or around an objective being defended by a MCSF unit, or an attack has already occurred. Task organized forces must react and respond to the potential threat within established time limits. The reaction may be governed by unit SOP and may include the use of more than one squad; however, each squad will operate as a unit with assigned task depending on the alert.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped FAST unit, provided a security breach or incident, and within the scope of the platoon defensive mission at a designated building, facility or area.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effect of an attack or to prevent such an incident from occurring.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Alert the reaction force within assigned timelines.
2. Issue a fragmentary order.
3. Conduct pre-combat checks.
4. Establish Reaction Force positions.
5. Apply continuum of force as required.
6. Conduct post reinforcement as tasked.
7. Manage detainees.
8. Manage casualties.
9. Transmit Situation Report (SITREP).

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
2. MCWP 3-10 Ground Combat Operations
3. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-5003	FAST-PS-5001	MCSF-MAN-5003
NWS-PS-5002		

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-ATFP-3002	MCSF-MAN-3005	MCSF-MAN-3006
MCSF-MAN-3009		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** At a minimum guard mount will cover: deadly force, rules of engagement, personnel, weapons and equipment inspection, special and general orders, vital intelligence, communications procedures, weapons handling, and immediate action procedures.

**MCSF-PS-4001:** Establish a cordon

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4                      MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2                      MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Upon arrival at a site with no known security personnel, one element within the security force will have to provide security while the other elements execute their tasks.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit

**STANDARD:** Ensuring 360 degree coverage.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Direct subordinates to establish security positions
2. Establish fields of fire
3. Security element commander confirms the security element's positions.
4. Conduct Reporting as required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCRP 3-30.5 Multi-service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Cordon and Search Operations
3. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-PS-5001                      NWS-PS-5003

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** MCSF-MAN-3009

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**MCSF-PS-4002:** Execute the interior guard

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1                      MCT 6.1.1.4                      MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2  
MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** Interior guard is inherent to all site security missions. When walking post, touring posts, or standing a watch, guard personnel are required to ensure that all guard orders and special orders are strictly adhered to for the protection of personnel and property. Marines will know, understand, and enforce all general and special orders and be knowledgeable of their guard chain of command.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit

**STANDARD:** ensuring no unauthorized access, theft, or destruction of government property.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Posts are established.
2. Employ Deadly Force when required.
3. Conduct Guard Mount.
4. Establish watch rotation.

**REFERENCES:** FM 22-6 Guard Duty

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-5003                      FAST-PS-5001                      MCSF-MAN-5004  
NWS-PS-5001                      NWS-PS-5002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-MAN-3002                      MCSF-MAN-3003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**MCSF-PS-4003:** Conduct guard mount

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1                      MCT 6.1.1.4                      MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** In support of guard force operations, designated leadership or the COG conducts the guard mount to verify manning for specified posts and duties, and inspect knowledge and equipment.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit.

**STANDARD:** to ensure personnel are prepared to man posts.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Guard school, if applicable.
2. Guard Muster by the COG.
3. Guard Mount brief
4. Conduct Personnel inspection.
5. Conduct Weapons inspection.
6. Conduct Weapons upload and download.
7. Conduct post and relief of guard force.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
2. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-5003

FAST-PS-5001

NWS-PS-5002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-MAN-3002

MCSF-MAN-3003

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** At a minimum guard mount will cover: deadly force, rules of engagement, conducts personnel, weapons and equipment inspection, briefs special and general orders, vital intelligence, communications procedures, weapons handling, and immediate action procedures. The SOG ensures that DM's receive a brief.

---

**MCSF-PS-4004:** Conduct patrolling operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1

MCT 6.1.1.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit.

**STANDARD:** To prevent unauthorized access of, or neutralize a potential threat and to support the defense of an objective and spoil potential attacks.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct orders process.
2. Issue patrol order.
3. Conduct rehearsals.
4. Conduct PCC/PCIs.
5. Depart friendly lines.
6. Move in assigned formation.
7. Move as a base unit.
8. Maintain contact with the base unit.
9. Comply with tactical control measures.
10. Provide security in assigned sectors.
11. Execute immediate actions.
12. Return to friendly lines.
13. Conduct debrief.

**REFERENCES:** MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** FAST-MAN-5002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-MAN-3002	MCSF-MAN-3004	MCSF-MAN-3005
MCSF-MAN-3008		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**NWS-MAN-4001:** React to an engagement (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3	MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2	MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3
MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4		



**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The unit is conducting a tactical movement. Elements have either observed or been engaged by enemy forces. The enemy can be moving or stationary.

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, an order, and a moving or maneuvering unit scheme of maneuver; while motorized, or dismounted; during daylight or limited visibility.

**STANDARD:** In accordance with the commander's intent while maintaining control of all elements and awareness of adjacent unit positions and actions.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Deploy and report.
2. Evaluate the situation.
3. Develop the situation.
4. Select a course of action.
5. Execute the plan.
6. Consolidate.
7. Report to higher.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-10A.4 Marine Rifle Squad
2. MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** NWS-PS-5004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**  
MCSF-ATFP-3002 MCSF-MAN-3006

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	0	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	40 rounds per Marine
A062 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 Linked	200 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single Round	10 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M856 Linked	200 rounds per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	50 rounds per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 rounds per Marine
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	200 rounds per Marine

A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	200 rounds per Marine
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	1 grenades per squad
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	1 grenades per squad
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	1 grenades per squad
G982. Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per squad
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signals per squad
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green Star Cluster M125A1	1 signals per squad
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M115A2	1 projectiles per squad

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range  
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Actions upon deployment can be a hasty ambush, immediate assault or break contact.

---

**NWS-MAN-4002:** Conduct mounted operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, vehicles mounted with machineguns, commander's intent, a scheme of maneuver, required equipment, and ammunition.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver with tactically sound movement utilizing tactical military vehicles in an open or restricted environment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Issue/receive the order.
4. Prepare for combat operations.
5. Screen forward, flank, or rear of a moving unit.
6. Utilize visual/radio communications.
7. Maintain all around security.
8. Execute tactical logistics as required.
9. Execute contingency plans as required.
10. React to threats.
11. Conduct follow-on missions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Crew-Served Machine Guns
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

NWS-MAN-5001                      NWS-MAN-5002                      NWS-PS-5005

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**

MCSF-ATFP-3002                      MCSF-MAN-3004                      MCSF-MAN-3005  
MCSF-MAN-3007                      MCSF-MAN-3009

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. The full range of environmental conditions include daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, and littoral.

---

**NWS-PS-4001:** Recapture Strategic asset

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, designated guard force personnel, with all required equipment.

**STANDARD:** To gain positive control of strategic asset and neutralize all threats.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Receive order or execute battle drill, as applicable.
2. Movement to the objective.
3. Enter the objective, as applicable.
4. Clear the objective, as applicable.
5. Secure the objective.
6. Report to higher.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DODD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual
2. MCRP 12-10B.1 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** NWS-PS-5006

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	90 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Rooms and buildings utilized for this event should replicate, to the greatest extent possible, the exclusion structure where actual contingency operations may take place. When possible, the actual exclusion structure should be used for this event.

---

**NWS-PS-4002:** Establish a cordon

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3 MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, designated guard force personnel, and an area to be secured.

**STANDARD:** To establish 360 degree isolation of the objective by physical presence or by fire in support of the mission.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Direct subordinates to establish security positions.
2. Establish fields of fire.
3. Security element commander confirms the security elements positions.
4. Conduct reporting.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCRP 12-10B.1 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
3. MCRP 3-30.5 Multi-service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Cordon and Search Operations
4. SECNAVINST 5530.4 Naval Security Force Employment and Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-5001                      NWS-PS-5001                      NWS-PS-5002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**    MCSF-MAN-3009

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Rooms and buildings utilized for this event should replicate, to the greatest extent possible, the exclusion structure where actual contingency operations may take place. When possible, the actual exclusion structure should be used for this event.

---

**NWS-PS-4003:**    React to a security alert

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3                      MCT 6.1.5.2.3.2                      MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3  
MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:**    YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:**    3 months

**DESCRIPTION:**    A security alert is announced when a possible threat is perceived in or around a limited area. Security Forces must react and respond to the potential threat within established time limits with specific forces listed in the references.

**CONDITION:**    Given a NWS unit, designated guard force personnel, and a mission.

**STANDARD:**    Identifying and neutralizing any potential threat.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Alert the reaction force.
2. Issue an order.
3. Establish reaction force positions.
4. Apply continuum of force.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual
2. MCRP 12-10B.1 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
3. SSPINST S-8126
4. SWF S-8126

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** NWS-PS-5002

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:**  
MCSF-ATFP-3002 MCSF-MAN-3006

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**NWS-RTT-4001:** Clear an exclusion structure (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3 MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**DESCRIPTION:** In the event that an Exclusion Area is compromised, certain TTPs must be utilized clear the Exclusion Area and address the threat.

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF Recapture Tactics Team (RTT).

**STANDARD:** To regain control of the structure.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. React to a Security Alert.
2. Isolate the structure.
3. Move to the entry point.
4. Decide on a method of entry.
5. Conduct the breach.
6. Make entry into the structure.
7. Clear the structure.
8. Secure the structure.
9. Report to higher.

**REFERENCES:** DODD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

MCSF-PS-5001 NWS-PS-5004

**INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:** MCSF-MAN-3006

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	0	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	60 cartridges per Marine
A065 Ctg, 5.56mm Military Pack Short Range	60 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	90 cartridges per Marine
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
GG20 Grenade, Hand Stun	10 grenades per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 8

3000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	8000	8-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	8001	8-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	8002	8-2
3000-LEVEL EVENTS . . . . .	8003	8-3



MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 8

3000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**8000. PURPOSE.** Chapter 8 contains the 3000 level collective training events for the MCSF T&R manual.

**8001. EVENT CODING.** Events in this T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12-character, 3-field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one. This field represents the community. This chapter contains the following community codes:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
FAST	Fleet Antiterrorism Support Team
MCSF	Marine Corps Security Force

b. Field two. This field represents the functional/duty area. This chapter contains the following functional/duty areas:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
ATFP	Anti-Terrorism Force Protection
CBRN	Chemical Biological Radiological Nuclear
MAN	Maneuver

c. Field three. This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events. This chapter contains the following event levels:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
5000	Platoon Level

**8002. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

<b>Event Code</b>	<b>E-Coded</b>	<b>Event</b>
MCSF-ATFP-3001	NO	Conduct ECP/VCP operations
MCSF-ATFP-3002	NO	Defeat a Vehicle Attack
MCSF-MAN-3001	NO	Conduct fire and movement (S/L)
MCSF-MAN-3002	NO	Conduct a defense (S/L)
MCSF-MAN-3003	NO	Conduct a listening post/observation post (S/L)
MCSF-MAN-3004	NO	Conduct a passage of lines (S/L)
MCSF-MAN-3005	NO	Conduct a link up (S/L)
MCSF-MAN-3006	NO	Detain personnel (S/L)
MCSF-MAN-3007	NO	Conduct Mounted Operations (S/L)
MCSF-MAN-3008	NO	Conduct a patrol (S/L)
MCSF-MAN-3009	NO	Support by fire/overwatch (S/L)

**8003. 3000-LEVEL EVENTS**

**FAST-CBRN-3001:** Perform field identification of a CBRN agent

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** A platoon subjected to a CBRN attack must be able to identify what the agent is so the platoon, platoon commander, and higher headquarters understand the threat and can make informed decisions about follow-on actions and MOPP.

**CONDITION:** Given a tasked organized and equipped FAST unit, a actual/simulated CBRN attack, an M-50 Joint Service General Purpose Mask, a complete set of CBRN Individual Protective Equipment, a service weapon, individual field equipment, SL-3 detection and decontamination equipment, and a checklist while at MOPP-4.

**STANDARD:** To properly identify the CBRN agent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Approach the point of attack from up wind.
2. Locate, mark and secure contaminated area.
3. Employ two pieces of detection equipment to independently confirm type of contamination.
4. Report findings to the COC.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 10-10E.4 CBRN Threats and Hazards
  2. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
  3. MCWP 3-37.2 Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for NBC Protection
- 

**FAST-CBRN-3002:** Mitigate an area of CBRN contamination

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** A platoon subjected to a CBRN attack may have to operate for some time in the CBRN environment. In order to reduce the effects of the agent, it must be quarantined to minimize the hazard's spread by environmental conditions and accidental traversing.

**CONDITION:** Given a tasked organized and equipped FAST unit, an actual/simulated CBRN attack, an M-50 Joint Service General Purpose Mask, a complete set of CBRN Individual Protective Equipment, a service weapon, individual field equipment, SL-3 detection and decontamination equipment, and a checklist while at MOPP-4.

**STANDARD:** To apply a stable vapor hazard suppression and cordon off the area.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Approach the point of attack from up wind.
2. Locate contamination boundary and place marker stake.
3. Continue detecting and marking around the contaminated area.
4. String marking tape around the marking stakes.
5. Apply chemicals to reduce contamination concentration.
6. Cover the area inside the marked area with a vapor resistant cover and earth.
7. Report the size and location of the contaminated area to the COC.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF CBRN Support to CWMD Operations
  2. MCWP 3-37.2 Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for NBC Protection
- 

**FAST-CBRN-3003:** Monitor for CBRN hazards

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1                      MCT 6.1.1.4                      MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Before, during, and after a CBRN attack, continuous monitoring is necessary to detect the presence of a CBRN contaminant.

**CONDITION:** Given a tasked organized and equipped FAST unit, an actual/simulated CBRN threat, an M-50 Joint Service General Purpose Mask, a complete set of CBRN Individual Protective Equipment, a service weapon, individual field equipment, SL-3 complete detection and decontamination equipment, and a checklist while at MOPP-4.

**STANDARD:** To prevent the spread of CBRN contamination.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Recognize the threat of a CBRN attack.
2. Place detectors at opportune locations to provide early warning before an attack.
3. Monitor a contaminated area to verify effectiveness of mitigation.
4. Monitor uncontaminated areas to detect spread of contamination.
5. Report findings to COC.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
  2. MCWP 3-37.2 Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for NBC Protection
-

**MCSF-ATFP-3001:** Conduct ECP/VCP operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Entry control points are established to control the flow of vehicles and personnel into and out of a secured area. Guard personnel must have knowledge of the different responsibilities executed at an Entry Control Point (ECP). Physical geometry and site security layout, ROE and local traffic laws of host nations may dictate the extent of a unit's ECP operations. Proper coordination must take place with all adjacent and supporting organizations to ensure the most effective ECP construction and implementation. Additional use of physical barriers, channeling devices, technical devices, Military Working Dogs (MWD), and host nation translators or interpreters are recommended assets while conducting these missions.

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, a mission, and commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To prevent unauthorized personnel, contraband or vehicles from entering or exiting the designated area.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Coordinate with adjacent units.
3. Establish search, security, and over-watch areas with stand-off distances.
4. Establish warning signs and signals in accordance with rules of engagement.
5. Employ interpreters.
6. Establish a canalization zone to force movement into the checkpoint.
7. Establish a deceleration zone to slow vehicles, if required.
8. Establish search areas for both vehicles and personnel.
9. Establish escalation of force criteria and triggers.
10. Search personnel and vehicles separately and sequentially.
11. Handle Detainees, as required.
12. Submit reports as required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
2. MCRP 12-10B.1 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
3. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** FAST-ATFP-4002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

DODIC

A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round

QUANTITY

60 cartridges per Marine

A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17925 Airfield Site Selection Training Area  
Facility Code 17961 Combat In Cities Facility  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**EQUIPMENT:**

Technical kits  
Escalation of Force kits

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Plan for search of females given cultural factors.
  2. Integrate additional assets (working dogs, female Marines, technological enhancements).
  3. If possible, ensure integration with local or host-nation guard force.
  4. The Personnel search area needs to be placed out of view (if possible) and conducted by a minimum amount of personnel necessary.
- 

**MCSF-ATFP-3002:** Defeat a Vehicle Attack

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4                      MCT 6.1.5.2.3                      MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, mission, all necessary equipment, and a vehicle.

**STANDARD:** To clear a vehicle of potential threats.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Gain control of vehicle.
2. Determine temper and intent.
3. Engage vehicle as necessary.
4. Determine approach to vehicle.
5. Assume a formation.
6. Employ a diversionary device as necessary.
7. Maintain standoff.
8. Control driver.
9. Control occupants.
10. Search driver.
11. Search occupants.
12. Search vehicle.

13. Conduct turn over with supporting elements.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.221 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat
2. MCSF CQB HB MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-4004	MCSF-CSS-4001	MCSF-MAN-4003
MCSF-MAN-4004	NWS-MAN-4001	NWS-MAN-4002
NWS-PS-4003		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**MCSF-MAN-3001:** Conduct fire and movement (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1	MCT 6.1.1.4	MCT 6.1.5.2.3
MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit and order.

**STANDARD:** To provide internal suppression of the objective and close with the enemy.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Suppress the enemy (S).
2. Assess effects of fires (A).
3. Adjust fires as necessary.
4. Identify next covered position.
5. Move to next covered position under the cover of suppression(M).
6. Identify target and continue suppression to allow elements to move to next covered position.
7. Repeat steps 1-5 until the objective is seized.
8. Execute actions on the objective (K).
9. Consolidate

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 21-75 Combat Skills of the Soldier
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:** MCSF-MAN-4002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	0	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	40 per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	50 per Marine
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute M661	1 per Team
B508 Cartridge, 40mm Green Smoke Ground Marker M715	1 per Team
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground Marker M716	1 per Team
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute M583/M583A1	1 per Team
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 per Team
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night) XM1110	10 per Team
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT-4	1 per Team
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	1 per Team
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228 w/ Conf Clip	1 per Team
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67 w/ Conf Clip	1 per Team
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	1 per Team
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	1 per Team
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	1 per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	1 per Team
G982. Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	1 per Team
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber M72AS LAW Trainer	1 per Team
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	1 per Team
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M115A2	1 per Team

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range  
Facility Code 17750 Infantry Squad Battle Course

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Considerations, means of movement include unit, buddy, and individual. The event may also be used for cover and movement when there is no immediate enemy threat. A leader issues the ADDRAC in support of this event.

**MCSF-MAN-3002:** Conduct a defense (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1	MCT 6.1.1.4	MCT 6.1.5.2.3
MCT 6.1.7		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, a mission, commander's intent, and while functioning as part of a larger unit.

**STANDARD:** To deny unauthorized access, theft, or destruction to designated facilities.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Receive the order.
2. Move to objective rally point.
3. Conduct leader's reconnaissance.
4. Establish sectors of fire.
5. Occupy the defense.
6. Execute priorities of work.
7. Execute continuing actions.
8. Prepare for follow on missions.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-4001	FAST-ATFP-4002	FAST-MAN-4001
FAST-MAN-4002	FAST-MAN-4003	FAST-MAN-4004
MCSF-PS-4002	MCSF-PS-4003	MCSF-PS-4004
NWS-MAN-4001	NWS-MAN-4002	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	0	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

1. Training areas that support pyrotechnics.
2. Live fire and maneuver range.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Small arms to build range cards, assuming 4 TRPs, 1 FPL or PDF.
2. All environments are applicable.



**MCSF-MAN-3003:** Conduct a listening post/observation post (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1                      MCT 6.1.1.4                      MCT 6.1.5.2.3  
MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, an order, and supporting a defensive scheme of maneuver during daylight and limited visibility.

**STANDARD:** To provide early warning while seeking to avoid direct enemy contact.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct METT-T.
2. Plan immediate action drills and displacement criteria.
3. Occupy a covered and concealed position.
4. Identify sectors of observation and dead-space.
5. Report observations to higher.
6. Conduct relief in place as required.
7. Conduct debrief with higher.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-4001                      FAST-MAN-4004                      MCSF-MAN-4005  
MCSF-PS-4002                      MCSF-PS-4003

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	0	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**MCSF-MAN-3004:** Conduct a passage of lines (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4                      MCT 6.1.5.2.3                      MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, attachments, an order, and while serving as either the moving or stationary unit.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission, meet the commander's intent, with minimal disruption to operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Set conditions for passage of lines.
2. Conduct battle handover with stationary unit.
3. Move through the passage route(s).
4. Conduct battle handover to moving unit.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCRP 8-10B.8 Marine Troop Leader's Guide

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-4003	MCSF-MAN-4003	MCSF-PS-4004
NWS-MAN-4002		

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	0	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Planning must be coordinated between stationary and moving units and include control measures for link up, accountability {lead/rear trace}, coordinated CASEVAC plan, coordinated detainee plan, control measures for release point(s).

---

**MCSF-MAN-3005:** Conduct a link up (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1	MCT 6.1.1.4	MCT 6.1.5.2.3
MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3	MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4	MCT 6.1.7

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, an order, contact/linkup point(s), and while serving as either the moving or stationary unit.

**STANDARD:** To integrate friendly units for coordination in support of follow on missions.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Identify moving and stationary units.
3. Determine near and far recognition signal.
4. Move to contact point.
5. Moving unit initiates far recognition signal.
6. Stationary responds with far recognition signal.
7. Stationary unit initiates near recognition signal.
8. Moving responds with near recognition signal.
9. Complete link up.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-4003	MCSF-MAN-4003	MCSF-MAN-4004
MCSF-PS-4004	NWS-MAN-4002	

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	0	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Planning must be coordinated between stationary and moving units, must include control measures for link up, accountability, signal plan, coordinated CASEVAC plan. Link up can be physical or non-physical.

---

**MCSF-MAN-3006:** Detain personnel (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1	MCT 6.1.1.4	MCT 6.1.5.2.3
MCT 6.1.7		

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, an order, and apprehended personnel.

**STANDARD:** To ensure safe and expeditious handling of detainees in accordance with the laws of armed conflict, rules of engagement, and commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Search detainees.
2. Record initial findings.
3. Tag detainees.
4. Photograph scenes of intelligence value.
5. Inventory all items removed from detainees.
6. Report personnel detained.
7. Transfer detainees to a collection point.
8. Segregate detainees based on perceived status of authority or position.
9. Safeguard detainees.
10. Complete documentation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-ATFP-4003	FAST-MAN-4002	FAST-MAN-4004
NWS-MAN-4001	NWS-PS-4003	NWS-RTT-4001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	0	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17904 Prisoner Of War Training Area

**EQUIPMENT:** Detainee kits.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. The search should include all clothing on the individual, to include shoes. To ensure the safety and security of the capturing force, do not exempt anything from search.
2. Recording initial findings follows the need to photograph, sketch, witness statements and the details of the detainee and related equipment or documentation found, etc.

3. Tag detainees with a DD Form 2745 (Capture Tag) or a field-expedient capture tag that includes the following information: date and time of capture, capturing unit, location of capture (grid coordinates), special circumstances of capture (how the person was captured, if the detainee resisted, if the detainee surrendered, and so forth), did the person have weapons on them at the time of capture, list all documents and other items on their person at the time of capture as well as a sketch of findings locations, etc.
4. Deliver all documents/pocket litter captured with the detainee(s) in order to assist in questioning.
5. Unit should incorporate cultural and gender considerations into the event.

---

**MCSF-MAN-3007:** Conduct Mounted Operations (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4  
MCT 6.1.7

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

MCT 6.1.5.2.3.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, vehicles mounted with machineguns, commander's intent, a scheme of maneuver, required equipment, and ammunition.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver with tactically sound movement utilizing tactical military vehicles in an open or restricted environment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct operator maintenance for tactical vehicles.
2. Ensure the gun is properly mounted
3. Maintain command and control.
4. Conduct traveling.
5. Conduct traveling overwatch.
6. Conduct bounding.
7. Conduct immediate actions.
8. Conduct convoy security/escort.
9. Conduct link up/passage of lines.
10. Conduct route reconnaissance.
11. Conduct screening.
12. Place the gun into action.
13. Adjust fires onto targets.
14. Follow direction of the unit leader as required.
15. On command, displace team to new position.
16. Prepare for follow on missions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

MCSF-MAN-4003

NWS-MAN-4002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	0	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	40 rounds per Marine
A062 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 Linked	200 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single Round	10 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M856 Linked	200 rounds per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	50 rounds per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 rounds per Marine
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	200 rounds per Marine
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	200 rounds per Marine
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M115A2	1 Simulator per Team

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Convoy battle drills include but are not limited to: vehicle breakdown and recovery, bump plan, enemy contact, counter-mobility, target precedence and engagement criteria, counter/reaction to IED, casualty evacuation, break in contact, vehicle catch-up, security halts, detainee handling, etc.

---

**MCSF-MAN-3008:** Conduct a patrol (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.13.1.1

MCT 6.1.1.4

MCT 6.1.5.2.3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized and equipped MCSF unit, a mission, commander's intent, and while functioning as part of a larger unit.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission, meeting the commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct METT-T.
2. Task organize forces.
3. Issue a warning order.
4. Supervise pre-combat checks.
5. Conduct leader's reconnaissance.
6. Integrate fires.
7. Coordinate logistics.
8. Complete the plan.
9. Issue the order.
10. Lead pre-combat inspections, rehearsals, rehearsal of concept, and back-briefs.
11. Depart friendly lines.
12. Conduct immediate actions as required.
13. Conduct information collection.
14. Consolidate as necessary.
15. Return to friendly lines.
16. Conduct AAR's and debrief.

**REFERENCES:** MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-4003 MCSF-PS-4004

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	8	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**MCSF-MAN-3009:** Support by fire/overwatch (S/L)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 6.1.1.4 MCT 6.1.5.2.3 MCT 6.1.5.2.3.3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a MCSF unit, an order, and a moving or maneuvering unit scheme of maneuver; while motorized, or dismounted; during daylight or limited visibility.

**STANDARD:** To support scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Execute movement with mission essential gear to firing/overwatch position.
2. Occupy firing/overwatch positions.
3. Conduct targeting.
4. Establish target reference points
5. Deconflict battlespace geometry.
6. Adjust fires/overwatch in concert with final coordination lines.
7. Execute signal plan.
8. Assess effects on target(s).
9. Displace as necessary.
10. Consolidate.
11. Conduct post combat actions.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-10A.4 Marine Rifle Squad

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:**

FAST-MAN-4001	FAST-MAN-4002	FAST-MAN-4003
FAST-MAN-4004	MCSF-MAN-4003	MCSF-MAN-4004
MCSF-PS-4001	NWS-MAN-4002	NWS-PS-4002

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	4	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	80 rounds per Marine
A062 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 Linked	200 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single Round	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Tracer M856 Linked	200 rounds per Marine
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 rounds per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	80 rounds per Marine
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team



G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range  
Facility Code 17750 Infantry Squad Battle Course

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 9

2000 LEVEL INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	9000	9-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	9001	9-2
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS. . . . .	9002	9-3
2000 LEVEL EVENTS . . . . .	9003	9-5

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 9

2000 LEVEL INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

**9000. PURPOSE.** This chapter details the individual events that pertain to MCSF personnel. Each individual event provides an event title, along with the conditions events will be performed under, and the standard to which the event must be performed to be successful.

**9001. EVENT CODING.** Events in this T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12-character, 3-field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology

a. Field one. This field represents the community. This chapter contains the following community codes:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
FAST	Fleet Antiterrorism Support Team
MCSF	Marine Corps Security Force
8152	Marine Corps Security Force Guard
8154	Marine Corps Security Force Close Quarters Battle Team Member

b. Field two. This field represents the functional/duty area. This chapter contains the following functional/duty areas:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
ATFP	Anti-Terrorism Force Protection
BDE	Ballistic Dynamic Entry
COMM	Communications
CPP	Combat Pistol Program
CQB	Close Quarters Battle
CSS	Combat Service Support
C2	Command and Control
DEF	Defense
DM	Designated Marksman
HRST	Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques
LOG	Logistics
M32	Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher
NLW	Non-Lethal Weapons
OFF	Offense
PAT	Patrolling
TACT	Tactics
TRNG	Training
VEH	Vehicle

c. Field three. This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events. This chapter contains the following event levels:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
2000	Core Plus Skills

**9002. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS**

<b>Event Code</b>	<b>E-Coded</b>	<b>Event</b>
8154-BDE-2001	NO	Conduct a Manual Breach
8154-BDE-2002	NO	Conduct a Ballistic Breach
8154-BDE-2003	NO	Conduct a Thermal Breach
8154-BDE-2004	NO	Conduct a Mechanical Breach
8154-BDE-2005	NO	Conduct an Explosive Breach
8154-BDE-2006	NO	Plan a Dynamic Entry
8154-BDE-2007	NO	Prepare for a Dynamic Entry
8154-TACT-2001	NO	Clear an exclusion structure
8154-TACT-2002	NO	Employ a diversionary device
8154-TACT-2003	NO	React to an improvised explosive device (IED)
8154-TACT-2004	NO	Move to the Objective
8154-TACT-2005	NO	Enter an Objective
8154-TACT-2006	NO	Clear an objective
8154-TACT-2007	NO	Clear a hallway
8154-TACT-2008	NO	Clear a stairwell/ladderwell
8154-TACT-2009	NO	Perform marshaling area procedures
8154-TACT-2010	NO	Control an occupant
8154-TACT-2011	NO	Evacuate an Objective
8154-TACT-2012	NO	Perform individual actions while clearing an enclosure
8154-TACT-2013	NO	Serve as a Marshalling Area Control Officer
8154-WPNS-2001	NO	Engage threats with the service rifle
8154-WPNS-2002	NO	Engage threats with the Service Pistol
FAST-C2-2001	NO	Perform duties of a COC Operator
FAST-C2-2002	NO	Operate as the Platoon Intel Representative
FAST-COMM-2001	NO	Communicate using wired communications
FAST-COMM-2002	NO	Conduct long range communications
FAST-CSS-2001	NO	Conduct Embarkation
FAST-HRST-2001	NO	Employ HRST Knots
FAST-HRST-2002	NO	Conduct a fast-rope descent
FAST-HRST-2003	NO	Rig for fast-roping operations
FAST-HRST-2004	NO	Manage fast-rope operations
FAST-HRST-2005	NO	Supervise the safety of HRST operations
FAST-HRST-2006	NO	Maintain helicopter rope suspension techniques (HRST) equipment
FAST-NLW-2001	NO	Employ mechanical advantage control hold (MACH) techniques
FAST-NLW-2002	NO	Perform duties as control force commander
FAST-TACT-2001	NO	Employ a diversionary device
MCSF-ATFP-2001	NO	Conduct vehicle search
MCSF-ATFP-2002	NO	Conduct Threat and Vulnerability Assessment
MCSF-ATFP-2003	NO	Conduct personnel search
MCSF-CBRN-2001	NO	Maintain CBRN detection, decontamination, and individual protective equipment
MCSF-CBRN-2002	NO	React to a CBRN attack
MCSF-CBRN-2003	NO	Provide aid to casualties of CBRN agents
MCSF-CBRN-2004	NO	Operate in a Chemical, Biological, Radiological, Nuclear (CBRN) Environment
MCSF-COMM-2001	NO	Perform reporting procedures
MCSF-COMM-2002	NO	Submit a helicopter landing zone brief
MCSF-COMM-2003	NO	Communicate with a signal plan

MCSF-COMM-2004	NO	Conduct inter-squad communications.
MCSF-CPP-2001	NO	Engage stationary threats (night)
MCSF-CPP-2002	NO	Engage multiple stationary threats
MCSF-CPP-2003	NO	Engage moving threats
MCSF-CPP-2004	NO	Engage threats from barricade positions
MCSF-CPP-2005	NO	Employ the pistol while moving
MCSF-CPP-2006	NO	Engage threats when transitioning from a rifle
MCSF-CPP-2007	NO	Engage threats in close proximity
MCSF-CSS-2001	NO	Perform tactical field care on a casualty
MCSF-DEF-2001	NO	Occupy a listening/observation post (S/L)
MCSF-DEF-2002	NO	Defend a position
MCSF-DEF-2003	NO	Control a fire team in the defense.
MCSF-DEF-2004	NO	Lead a unit in a defensive (S/L)
MCSF-DEF-2005	NO	Apply the continuum of force
MCSF-DEF-2006	NO	Stand post
MCSF-DEF-2007	NO	Establish a post
MCSF-DEF-2008	NO	Conduct guard mount
MCSF-DEF-2009	NO	Prepare a fire plan sketch or overlay (S/L)
MCSF-DEF-2010	NO	Employ a Machine gun in the Defense
MCSF-DEF-2011	NO	Conduct a defense
MCSF-DM-2001	NO	Perform weapons handling procedures with the designated marksman rifle system
MCSF-DM-2002	NO	Perform preventative maintenance on the designated marksman rifle system
MCSF-DM-2003	NO	Perform operator maintenance for optics
MCSF-DM-2004	NO	Zero the designated marksman rifle system
MCSF-DM-2005	NO	Predict cold bore placement
MCSF-DM-2006	NO	Engage targets with the designated marksman rifle system at known distances
MCSF-DM-2007	NO	Engage targets with the designated marksman rifle system at unknown distances
MCSF-DM-2008	NO	Qualify at various ranges using a limited visibility device
MCSF-DM-2009	NO	Conduct observation
MCSF-DM-2010	NO	Execute surveillance of an objective (S/L)
MCSF-DM-2011	NO	Prepare a Designated Marksman range card (S/L)
MCSF-DM-2012	NO	Perform the duties of a Designated Marksman observer (S/L)
MCSF-DM-2013	NO	Conduct individual actions in a DM Position (DMP) (S/L)
MCSF-DM-2014	NO	Engage targets with the designated marksman rifle system at various ranges using alternate shooting positions
MCSF-DM-2015	NO	Engage multiple targets at unknown distances with mil holds
MCSF-DM-2016	NO	Engage targets with a designated marksman weapon system at unknown distances using max point blank
MCSF-DM-2017	NO	Engage targets at an angle
MCSF-DM-2018	NO	Lead a DM unit in support of MCSF operations
MCSF-M32-2001	NO	Perform operator maintenance on a Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher
MCSF-M32-2002	NO	Perform weapons handling procedures for a Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher
MCSF-M32-2003	NO	Bore sight an M32 Multi-Shot 40mm Grenade Launcher

MCSF-M32-2004	NO	Perform misfire procedures on a M32 Multi-Shot 40mm Grenade Launcher
MCSF-M32-2005	NO	Zero an M32 Multi-Shot 40mm Grenade Launcher
MCSF-M32-2007	NO	Engage targets with a M32 Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher
MCSF-NLW-2001	NO	Conduct crowd control
MCSF-OFF-2001	NO	Perform individual movement in an urban environment (S/L)
MCSF-OFF-2002	NO	Perform individual actions in a patrol (S/L)
MCSF-OFF-2003	NO	Lead a fire team as an element of a patrol (S/L)
MCSF-PAT-2001	NO	Determine the error in a lensatic compass
MCSF-PAT-2002	NO	Navigate with a map and compass
MCSF-PAT-2003	NO	Prepare for combat
MCSF-PAT-2004	NO	Perform individual movement techniques (S/L)
MCSF-PAT-2005	NO	Handle detainees (S/L)
MCSF-PAT-2006	NO	Perform individual actions in passage of lines (S/L)
MCSF-PAT-2007	NO	Perform individual actions in a patrol (S/L)
MCSF-PAT-2008	NO	Perform immediate actions upon contact with the enemy (S/L)
MCSF-PAT-2009	NO	Recognize indicators of Improvised Explosive Devices (IED) (S/L)
MCSF-PAT-2010	NO	React to an unexploded IED (L/S)
MCSF-PAT-2011	NO	React to an IED attack (S/L)
MCSF-PAT-2012	NO	Develop a warning order
MCSF-PAT-2013	NO	Lead a fire team as an element of a patrol
MCSF-PAT-2014	NO	Write a squad patrol order
MCSF-PAT-2015	NO	Lead a squad patrol (S/L)
MCSF-TACT-2001	NO	Clear an objective
MCSF-TRNG-2001	NO	Conduct risk assessment
MCSF-TRNG-2002	NO	Conduct small unit training
MCSF-TRNG-2003	NO	Issue an order
MCSF-VEH-2001	NO	Establish a load plan for a tactical vehicle
MCSF-VEH-2002	NO	Conduct mounted land navigation
MCSF-VEH-2003	NO	Perform individual actions from a vehicle (S/L)
MCSF-VEH-2004	NO	Prepare an immobilized vehicle for towing operations from the front
MCSF-VEH-2006	NO	Communicate using hand and arm signals
MCSF-VEH-2007	NO	Communicate using organic tactical vehicle radio communications equipment
MCSF-VEH-2008	NO	Maneuver a tactical vehicle during off-road operations (S/L)
MCSF-VEH-2009	NO	Perform tactical vehicle maneuvers (S/L)
MCSF-VEH-2010	NO	Employ security measures during vehicle security halts
MCSF-VEH-2011	NO	Lead a team/squad in motorized operations (S/L)
MCSF-VEH-2012	NO	Conduct Technical Driving (S/L)
MCSF-VEH-2013	NO	Conduct non-standard recovery methods for a tactical vehicle

**9003. 2000 LEVEL EVENTS**

**8154-BDE-2001:** Conduct a Manual Breach

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event encompasses the individual's actions approaching a breach point, actions on the breach point, and actions immediately following obtaining access. The individual is expected to use one or more of the following breaching tools to accomplish this task: Sledge Hammer, Thor's Hammer, Halligan Tool; based upon mission requirements.

**BILLETS:** CQB Breacher

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of an RTT, given a mission, and required breaching equipment

**STANDARD:** To allow unobstructed entry of the assault team across the Range of Military Operations (ROMO) while minimizing collateral damage and hazards to personnel.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Move to breach point.
2. Determine type of breaching tool to utilize.
3. Determine target area.
4. Conduct breach.
5. Assess breach.
6. Rejoin the stack.

**REFERENCES:** UNIT SOP Unit's Standing Operating Procedures

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**EQUIPMENT:** Marine Assault Breacher's Kit (NSN: 4240-01-531-1165),  
Personal Protective Equipment.

**MATERIAL:** Doors (wood or metal), door knobs, deadbolts, windows (double hung, plate, or casement), chain linked fence.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. Re-breachable door and window trainers are a cost effective and suitable substitute for actual target material in a training environment. This T&R event may be performed by all personnel under the direct supervision of a current MOE Technician.

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:**

1. Marines instructing this event must be qualified and certified as a Methods of Entry breacher and, or Close Quarters Battle certified.
2. This task is for Recapture Tactics Teams only.

**8154-BDE-2002:** Conduct a Ballistic Breach

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event encompasses the individual's actions approaching a breach point, actions on the breach point, and actions immediately following obtaining access. The individual is expected to use the M500 Service Shotgun with or without Military Enhancement Kit.

**BILLETS:** CQB Breacher

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a RTT, given a mission, and service shotgun

**STANDARD:** To allow unobstructed entry of the assault team while minimizing collateral damage and hazards to personnel.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare to employ ballistic equipment.
2. Move to breach point.
3. Determine target area.
4. Conduct breach.
5. Assess breach.
6. Rejoin the stack.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MOES-BL Methods of Entry School Breacher Logbook
2. SL-3 09687B Marine Assault Breacher Kit
3. SOP Unit SOP Unit/Local Standing/Standard Operating Procedures
4. TM 10003A/07172A/09081A-13&P Remington and Mossberg Shotgun Operators Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA54 Cartridge, 12 Gauge, Breaching, M1030	40 rounds per Marine
AA60 Cartridge, 12 Gauge #00 Buckshot	6 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**EQUIPMENT:** M500 Service Shotgun

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Task is for Recapture Tactics Teams only.



**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** 1. Marines instructing this event must be qualified and certified as a Methods of Entry Breacher and, or Close Quarters Battle certified.

---

**8154-BDE-2003:** Conduct a Thermal Breach

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event encompasses the breacher's actions in the Last Covered and Concealed (LCC) position, actions on the objective, and actions immediately following conclusion of the assault. The breacher is expected to use a Tactical Cutting Torch to accomplish this task.

**BILLETS:** MCSF Breacher

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a requirement, tactical cutting torch, target, mission intelligence, and the references

**STANDARD:** To allow unobstructed entry of the assault team while minimizing collateral damage and hazards to personnel.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare to employ a tactical cutting torch.
2. Employ a tactical cutting torch.
3. Conduct post-assault actions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MOES-BL Methods of Entry School Breacher Logbook
2. SOP Unit SOP Unit/Local Standing/Standard Operating Procedures
3. TCTK - 2006 Tactical Cutting Torch Kits Operating Instructions Manual (July 2006)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range

**EQUIPMENT:**

1. Marine Assault Breacher's Kit (MABK) (NSN: 4240-01-531-1165)
2. Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)

**MATERIAL:** 1. Local unit mission specific target material (i.e.: Maritime ship hatch: NSNs 2040009928453 and/or 2040005556380, 4x8 foot sheet of 1/4 inch hot rolled steel, or other suitable substitute).

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** Trauma qualified Corpsman

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** PRP Marines instructing this event must be qualified and certified as a Methods of Entry Technician.

---

**8154-BDE-2004:** Conduct a Mechanical Breach

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event encompasses the breacher's actions in the Last Covered and Concealed (LCC) position, actions on the objective, and actions immediately following conclusion of the assault. The Breacher is expected to use the cut-off saw.

**BILLETS:** MCSF Breacher

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a requirement, mechanical equipment, target, mission intelligence, and the references

**STANDARD:** To allow unobstructed entry of the assault team while minimizing collateral damage and hazards to personnel.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct pre-employment checks of mechanical equipment.
2. Employ mechanical equipment.
3. Conduct post-assault actions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MOE Log Book Methods of Entry Breacher's Log Book
2. SOPS, LOCAL UNIT Local Unit Standard Operational Procedures (SOPs)
3. STIHL TS Series STIHL TS series quick cut saw operators manuals

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range

**EQUIPMENT:**

1. Marine Assault Breacher's Kit (MABK) (NSN: 4240-01-531-1165)
2. Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)

**MATERIAL:** 1. Local unit mission specific target material [i.e.: doors (wood or metal), door knobs, rebar, wooden 2x4, maritime ships hatch NSN: 2040009928453 and/or 2040005556380, 4x8 foot sheet of 1/8 inch hot rolled steel, or suitable substitute].

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** Marines instructing this event must be qualified and certified as a Methods of Entry Technician.

---

**8154-BDE-2005:** Conduct an Explosive Breach

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event encompasses the breacher's actions in the Last Covered and Concealed (LCC) position, actions on the objective, and actions immediately following conclusion of the assault. The Breacher is expected to utilize explosive tools and techniques and record charge and charge effects within the charge report.

**BILLETS:** MCSF Breacher

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a requirement, charge, target, mission intelligence, and the references

**STANDARD:** To allow unobstructed entry of the assault team while minimizing collateral damage and hazards to personnel.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare to employ a charge.
2. Employ a charge.
3. Conduct post-assault actions.
4. Complete a charge report.

**REFERENCES:**

1. SOPS, LOCAL UNIT Local Unit Standard Operational Procedures (SOPs)
2. SWO 60-AA-MMA-010 Demolition Materials

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AX14 Primer, Percussion 12 Gauge W209	4 blasting caps per Marine
M023 Charge, Demolition Block M112 1-1/4 pound C-4	5 charges per Marine
M456 Cord, Detonating PETN Type I Class E	100 FT per Marine
M980 Charge, Demolition Sheet 0.0831 Inch Thick	3 FT per Marine
M981 Charge, Demolition Sheet 0.125 Inch Thick	3 FT per Marine
M982 Charge, Demolition Sheet 0.166 Inch Thick	7 FT per Marine
MM30 Charge, Flexible 20 Gram PETN MK140 Mod 0	10 charges per Marine
MM51 Charge, Demolition Low Hazard MK143 Mod 0 600 Grains/ft	15 FT per Marine
MN08 Igniter, Time Blasting Fuse with Shock Tube Capability M81	20 igniters per Marine
MN52 Detonator, Percussion, Non-Electric MK154 Mod 0	15 detonators per Marine
MU40 Cord, Detonating 400 Grains per Foot	2 FT per Marine
MU42 Cord, Detonating 100 Grains per Foot	20 FT per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range

**EQUIPMENT:** Marine Assault Breacher's Kit (MABK) (NSN: 4240-01-531-1165), Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)

**MATERIAL:** Local unit mission specific target material [i.e.: doors (wood or metal), door knobs, windows (double hung, plate, or casement), fences, roofs, masonry (mud brick, block, rebar-reinforced block, and solid concrete walls), domestic residence walls, and shipboard hull/bulkhead/hatches].

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** Trauma qualified Corpsman

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. Commanders will ensure that Marines conducting these events are in compliance with NAVMC Directive 5100.8: MARINE CORPS OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH (OSH) PROGRAM MANUAL; Chapter 16.

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** PRP Marines instructing this event must be qualified and certified as a Methods of Entry Technician.

---

**8154-BDE-2006:** Plan a Dynamic Entry

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Upon receipt of a Warning Order, the breacher is expected to use pertinent intelligence in the analysis and planning of the dynamic entry portion of a mission.

**BILLETS:** MCSF Breacher

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given the requirement, mission intelligence, and the references as a MOE trained Breacher

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver, satisfy commander's intent and provide the team with mission essential information.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine mission requirements.
2. Assess the target.
3. Assess the hazards.
4. Determine the method of entry to be used.
5. Determine the required equipment.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.27C Risk Management
2. MOE Log Book Methods of Entry Breacher's Log Book
3. SOPS, LOCAL UNIT Local Unit Standard Operational Procedures (SOPS)
4. SWO 60-AA-MMA-010 Demolition Materials

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** Marines conducting this event must be qualified and certified as a Methods of Entry Technician.

---

**8154-BDE-2007:** Prepare for a Dynamic Entry

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event encompasses the preparations conducted concurrently with mission planning and immediately following the completion of planning. The Breacher is expected to utilize manual, mechanical, ballistic, thermal, and explosive tools and techniques.

**BILLETS:** MCSF Breacher

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a requirement, mission intelligence, breacher's equipment, Class V, and the references

**STANDARD:** To ensure the assault team is ready to execute the mission.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine breaching equipment/Class V required.
2. Gather Class V materials (as required).
3. Construct charges (as required).
4. Construct priming systems (as required).
5. Prepare manual equipment (as required).
6. Prepare mechanical equipment (as required).
7. Prepare ballistic equipment (as required).
8. Prepare thermal equipment (as required).
9. Conduct a breacher's brief.
10. Conduct rehearsals.
11. Conduct inspections.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MOE Log Book Methods of Entry Breacher's Log Book
2. OMMBS Operators Manual - Stihl Multiblade Saw
3. SOPS, LOCAL UNIT Local Unit Standard Operational Procedures (SOPs)
4. SWO 60-AA-MMA-010 Demolition Materials
5. TCTK - 2006 Tactical Cutting Torch Kits Operating Instructions Manual (July 2006)
6. TM 10003A/07172A/09081A-13&P Remington and Mossberg Shotgun Operators Manual
7. TM 10698A-10/1 M1014A Operators Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range

**EQUIPMENT:**

Marine Assault Breacher's Kit (MABK) (NSN: 4240-01-531-1165),  
Personal Protective Equipment (PPE), Shotgun (Mossberg Model 500).

**MATERIAL:** Scientific calculator, E-silhouette targets, Non-Metallic prop  
stick, Goodyear 330B rubber, 1000 ml IV bags, 550 cord, and spray  
adhesive.

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** Trauma qualified Corpsman

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Class V for this event will be obtained from  
Conduct an explosive breach.

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** PRP Marines conducting this event must be  
qualified and certified as a Methods of Entry Technician.

---

**8154-TACT-2001:** Clear an exclusion structure

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**GRADES:** PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a unknown threat in a designated area, all necessary  
equipment

**STANDARD:** To eliminate threats and protect designated assets.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Move to entry point
2. Make entry.
3. Apply clearing techniques.
4. Secure the asset
5. Conduct reporting procedures.
6. Conduct turnover
7. Prepare for follow on mission (as necessary)

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual
2. NTPP 3-07.11 Maritime Interception Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	90 cartridges per Marine
A065 Ctg, 5.56mm Military Pack Short Range	90 cartridges per Marine

A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	90 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	2 charges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** ISMT/Battle simulations

---

**8154-TACT-2002:** Employ a diversionary device

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary PPE and equipment.

**STANDARD:** To achieve impact within 3-5 feet from the entry point.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect the diversionary device.
2. Apply weapons conditions.
3. Show the diversionary device to the team members.
4. Identify the target area.
5. Place the diversionary device.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook
2. MCSF Regt Close Quarters Battle Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	2 charges per Marine

---

**8154-TACT-2003:** React to an improvised explosive device (IED)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**GRADES:** PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a potential improvised explosive device

**STANDARD:** In order to minimize the impact on your mission.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify an IED.
2. Notify team members of an IED.
3. Mark an IED.
4. Treat casualties if necessary.
5. Conduct reporting procedures.
6. Establish a limit of advance (minimum safe distance).
7. Bypass the IED as required.
8. Coordinate with supporting elements.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DODD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual
2. MCSF Regt Close Quarters Battle Drill Guide
3. SOP Unit SOP Unit/Local Standing/Standard Operating Procedures

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**EQUIPMENT:** IED Simulator

**MATERIAL:**

1. JIEDDTF 05-23 Joint Improvised Explosive Device Defeat Organization Tactics, Techniques and Procedures Handbook
2. MCIP 3-17.01 IED Defeat

---

**8154-TACT-2004:** Move to the Objective

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a task organized MCSF unit, given a mission, all necessary equipment, and an isolated and contained objective,

**STANDARD:** To tactically move from a covered and concealed position to an objective.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assume a formation.
2. Move from assault to the Last Covered and Concealed position (LCC).
3. Provide 360 degree security.
4. Use cover and concealment as necessary.



5. Identify the objective.
6. Form a team stack.
7. Move from LCC to primary breach point.
8. Initiate the ready signal.
9. Inform higher of unit status.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.221 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat
2. MCSF CQB HB MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	60 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	90 cartridges per Marine
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA68 Cartridge, 5.56mm Short Range Training M862	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Task is for Recapture Tactics Teams only.

---

**8154-TACT-2005:** Enter an Objective

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a task organized MCSF unit, given a mission, all necessary equipment, and an isolated and contained objective,

**STANDARD:** To establish a strong point, gaining a foothold, in order to allow the objective to be cleared.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Provide security.

2. Identify the entry point.
3. Assess the entry point.
4. Perform a count down.
5. Conduct door procedures.
6. Apply breaching techniques.
7. Employ a diversionary device.
8. Conduct a 5 step entry.
9. Eliminate threats.
10. Control occupants as required.
11. Announce clear as required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.221 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat
2. MCSF CQB HB MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	60 cartridges per Marine
A065 Ctg, 5.56mm Military Pack Short Range	60 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	90 cartridges per Marine
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
GG20- Grenade, Hand Stun	10 grenades per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. Task is for Recapture Tactics Teams only.

---

**8154-TACT-2006:** Clear an objective

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a task organized MCSF unit, given a mission, all necessary equipment, and an isolated and contained objective.

**STANDARD:** To remove all threats and facilitate follow on missions.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make entry.
2. Eliminate all threats.
3. Control all occupants.
4. Clear all danger areas.
5. Apply initiative based tactics.
6. Apply advanced clearing techniques.
7. Conduct dead checks.
8. Search occupants.
9. Mark rooms.
10. Recover assets as required.
11. Send appropriate reports to higher.
12. Conduct marshaling area procedures.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCSF CQB HB MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
2. TC 18-31 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	60 cartridges per Marine
A065 Ctg, 5.56mm Military Pack Short Range	60 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	90 cartridges per Marine
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
GG20- Grenade, Hand Stun	10 grenades per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. Task is for Recapture Tactics Teams (RTT) only.

---

**8154-TACT-2007:** Clear a hallway

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a task organized MCSF unit, given a mission, all necessary equipment, and an isolated and contained objective

**STANDARD:** To eliminate threats, provide security, and facilitate follow on actions.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make entry.
2. Identify the type of hallway.
3. Announce the type of hallway.
4. Announce the hallway formation.
5. Maintain security.
6. Control movement down the hallway.
7. Control speed down the hallway.
8. Eliminate threats.
9. Control occupants.
10. Eliminate danger areas.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCSF CQB HB MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
2. TC 18-31 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	60 cartridges per Marine
A065 Ctg, 5.56mm Military Pack Short Range	60 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	90 cartridges per Marine
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
GG20 Grenade, Hand Stun	10 grenades per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. Task is for Recapture Tactics Teams (RTT) only.

**8154-TACT-2008:** Clear a stairwell/ladderwell

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a task organized MCSF unit, given a mission, all necessary equipment, and an isolated and contained multilevel objective

**STANDARD:** To eliminate threats, provide security, and facilitate follow on actions.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make entry as required.
2. Cover all danger areas.
3. Employ a diversionary device as required.
4. Ascend/ descend the stairwell/ladderwell.
5. Eliminate threats as required.
6. Control occupants as required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.221 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat
2. MCSF CQB HB MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	60 cartridges per Marine
A065 Ctg, 5.56mm Military Pack Short Range	60 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	90 cartridges per Marine
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
GG20 Grenade, Hand Stun	10 grenades per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. Task is for Recapture Tactics Teams (RTT) only.

**8154-TACT-2009:** Perform marshaling area procedures

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized MCSF unit, mission, all necessary equipment and an objective that has been cleared

**STANDARD:** To consolidate forces, ensuring accountability.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Establish a marshaling area.
2. Mark the marshaling area.
3. Designate marshaling area pits.
4. Maintain accountability.
5. Process casualties.
6. Process occupants.
7. Submit a NATO standard report.
8. Conduct change over with supporting element.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCSF CQB HB MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
2. TC 18-31 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	60 cartridges per Marine
A065 Ctg, 5.56mm Military Pack Short Range	60 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	90 cartridges per Marine
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	30 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. Task is for Recapture Tactics Teams (RTT) only.

---

**8154-TACT-2010:** Control an occupant

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a task organized MCSF unit, given a mission, all necessary equipment, occupants, and an objective

**STANDARD:** To prevent disruption of clearing operations and safeguard personnel for further assessment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify an occupant.
2. Determine temper and intent.
3. Control occupant verbally.
4. Control occupant physically.
5. Announce clear.
6. Position cover-man.
7. Conduct hazard search procedures.
8. Restrain occupant.
9. Move occupant to appropriate location.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 4-11.8D Detainee Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. Task is for Recapture Tactics Teams (RTT) only.

---

**8154-TACT-2011:** Evacuate an Objective

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a task organized MCSF unit, given a mission, all necessary equipment and an objective

**STANDARD:** To tactically extract all personnel and equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assess the situation.
2. Determine the type of evacuation.
3. Communicate evacuation type to team members.
4. Coordinate with supporting elements.
5. Withdraw forces.
6. Gain accountability.
7. Move to last covered and concealed position.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCSF CQB HB MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
2. TC 18-31 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. Task is for Recapture Tactics Teams (RTT) only.

---

**8154-TACT-2012:** Perform individual actions while clearing an enclosure

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a MCSF task organized unit, given a mission, all necessary equipment, and an enclosure,

**STANDARD:** To regain control of an enclosure.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make entry.
2. Eliminate threats.
3. Control all occupants.
4. Clear danger areas.
5. Apply initiative based tactics.
6. Clear an L-Shape.
7. Clear a Hallway.
8. Clear Ladderwell/Stairwell.
9. Apply advanced clearing techniques.
10. React to an IED.



11. Search the dead.
12. Search the room.
13. Search the living.
14. Mark rooms.
15. Send situation report.
16. Assume a defensive posture.
17. Evacuate on command.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.221 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat
2. MCSF Regt Close Quarters Battle Drill Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**8154-TACT-2013:** Serve as a Marshalling Area Control Officer

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a mission, all necessary equipment, and an objective that has been cleared.

**STANDARD:** To account for all personnel and equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Establish a marshalling area.
2. Mark the marshalling area.
3. Designate marshalling area pits.
4. Supervise occupant searches.
5. Supervise casualty evacuation.
6. Gain accountability.
7. Assign strong points.
8. Submit reports.
9. Conduct change over with supporting element.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCSF Regt Close Quarters Battle Drill Guide
2. SOP Unit SOP Unit/Local Standing/Standard Operating Procedures
3. TC 18-31 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**8154-WPNS-2001:** Engage threats with the service rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary equipment, while stationary or moving, and potential threats inside or outside an objective.

**STANDARD:** To achieve 80 percent hits in vital areas.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Apply weapons conditions.
2. Identify Threat(s).
3. Maintain stable shooting platform.
4. Utilize cover as applicable.
5. Present the weapon.
6. Apply aiming techniques.
7. Engage threat(s) with appropriate shot delivery.
8. Engage moving threats if applicable.
9. Apply follow through.
10. Clear stoppages.
11. Search and assess.
12. Announce clear.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCSF Regt Close Quarters Battle Drill Guide
2. TM 05538/10012-OI Organizational and Intermediate Maintenance Manual with Repair Parts List (RPL) for M16A2, M16A4, M4, and M4A1 CQBW

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	3720 cartridges per Marine
AA68 Cartridge, 5.56mm Short Range Training M862	3720 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Task is for Recapture Tactics Teams only.

---

**8154-WPNS-2002:** Engage threats with the Service Pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary equipment, while stationary or moving, and potential threats inside or outside an objective

**STANDARD:** To achieve 80 percent hits in vital areas.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Apply weapons conditions.
2. Identify threats.
3. Maintain stable shooting platform.
4. Utilize cover as applicable.
5. Present the weapon.
6. Apply aiming techniques.
7. Engage threat (s) with appropriate shot delivery.
8. Engage moving targets if applicable.
9. Apply follow through.
10. Clear stoppages.
11. Search and assess.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
2. MCSF CQB HB MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
3. TM 08993-OR/1 OPERATOR'S MANUAL PISTOL, SEMI AUTOMATIC, 9mm, M9

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	1	N

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	5740 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**FAST-C2-2001:** Perform duties of a COC Operator

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Combat Operations Center Watchstander, FAST Co

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an operational situation, appropriate status boards, maps, overlays, unit standard operating procedures (SOP), and a unit journal within a combat operations center.

**STANDARD:** To support continuous operations.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Observe current operations and initiate appropriate action.
2. Provide command and control of all subordinate units.
3. Provide situational updates and briefings for key personnel.
4. Obtain information from the appropriate subordinate and supporting units.
5. Monitor and display tactical situation.
6. Manage information flow.
7. Receive and send required reports.
8. Report Commander's Critical Information Requirements.
9. Maintain journal of all significant events.
10. Distribute information.
11. Anticipate events and activities.
12. Conduct and/or participate in watch.
13. Update status information.
14. Annotate and/or conduct turnover of watch sections in accordance with unit SOP.
15. Conduct intelligence updates/briefs for the platoon as required.
16. Request local area maps, imagery, and products from higher and supported intelligence agencies.
17. Maintain appropriate tactical logbooks and records for further processing and exploitation.
18. Conduct or attend guard mount debriefs.
19. Assist in detainee operations.
20. Operate digital cameras and video assets.
21. Assist in the enforcement of active and passive counterintelligence measures.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCTP 3-10A Marine Infantry Battalion

---

**FAST-C2-2002:** Operate as the Platoon Intel Representative

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an order to conduct security operations as a member of a FAST platoon, and a supporting intelligence infrastructure.

**STANDARD:** To support the intelligence efforts of the COC.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct intelligence updates/briefs for the platoon as required.
2. Request local area maps, imagery, and products from higher and supported intelligence agencies.
3. Maintain appropriate tactical logbooks and records for further processing and exploitation.
4. Conduct or attend guard mount debriefs.
5. Assist in detainee operations.
6. Operate digital cameras and video assets.
7. Assist in the enforcement of active and passive counterintelligence measures.

**REFERENCES:** MCWP 2-10 Intelligence Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**EQUIPMENT:** Platoon intelligence assets (communication equipment, intelligence products, etc).

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** An opposing force.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** An event scenario must be provided that incorporates requirements to facilitate training to standard.

---

**FAST-COMM-2001:** Communicate using wired communications

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an SL-3 complete field telephone and communication wire connected to a distant site.

**STANDARD:** To establish communication with a distance site.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect equipment for serviceability.
2. Connect two or more telephones with wire.
3. Perform a communications check.
4. Troubleshoot as required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 6-22C RADIO OPERATOR'S HANDBOOK
2. TM 11-5805-201-12 Operational Manual, TA-312/PT

3. TM 11-5805-243-13-40-34P Operator's Manual for the TA-1/PT

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.

---

**FAST-COMM-2002:** Conduct long range communications

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tactical situation, an SL-3 complete individual radio, a distant site, a frequency or net ID, a call sign, and proper crypto device.

**STANDARD:** To establish communication with distant site.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine the long range communications asset(s) available.
2. Ensure proper frequencies/Channels are available/requested. (refer to CEOI/Guard chart).
3. Ensure proper crypto is available for the specific asset you have. (refer to CEOI).
4. Inspect radio/device and components, ensure gear is SL-3 complete.
5. Assemble the wireless system.
6. Connect to a power source (Batteries/vehicle).
7. Operate controls and indicators (fills, net IDs, frequency, time, etc.)
8. Load a net ID.
9. Select frequency.
10. Conduct a communications check.
11. Troubleshoot as required.
12. Load both crypto and frequencies into the radios before scheduled departure time.
13. Brief squad on basic troubleshooting procedures and available frequencies.
14. Conduct long range communications.
15. Maintain radio and components.
16. Remove power source.
17. Disassemble components.
18. Inspect radio/device and components.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 6-22C RADIO OPERATOR'S HANDBOOK

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Radio type can be individual squad, HF, VHF, UHF or SATCOM voice or data.

---

**FAST-CSS-2001:** Conduct Embarkation

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Embark Marine

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given the equipment of a task organized FAST unit, a specific aircraft type, and required number of 463L pallets.

**STANDARD:** To meet unit move requirements in accordance with conveyance restraints.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify unit hazardous materials that require certification.
2. Check warehouse pallets for serviceability.
3. Verify unit containers for serviceability.
4. Check 463L pallet system for serviceability.
5. Check tie down equipment for serviceability.
6. Ensure adequate dunnage/shoring is on hand.
7. Ensure unit embarkation boxes/cases are packed properly.
8. Ensure equipment liquid levels meet conveyance requirements.
9. Ensure unit equipment is palletized properly.
10. Ensure unit containers are packed properly.

**REFERENCES:**

1. AMC Affiliation Workbook 36-101 Equipment Preparation Course
2. DOD 4500.9-R Defense Transportation Regulation Part I
3. DOD 4500.9-R (Part I) Defense Transportation Regulation Part I (Passenger Movement)
4. DOD 4500.9-R (Part II) Defense Transportation Regulation Part II (Cargo Movement)
5. MCRP 4-11.3\_ Unit Embarkation Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**MATERIAL:** Adequate number of 463L pallet systems to support the palletization of all equipment per the mission requirement.

---

**FAST-HRST-2001:** Employ HRST Knots

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This task requirement will provide the individual with the ability to employ HRST knots. The appropriate ropes and knots for use in HRST Operations are discussed within MCRP 3-11.4\_, Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations. MCRP 3-11.4\_ must be used as the primary reference for completion of this task.

**BILLETS:** HRST Master

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a rope, a HRST operation, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To avoid or mitigate the risk of injury to self or loss/damage to equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect rope/tubular nylon.
2. Tie knots.
3. Dress knots.
4. Set knots.
5. Untie knots.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-11.4a Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

---

**FAST-HRST-2002:** Conduct a fast-rope descent

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This task requirement will provide the individual with the ability to conduct a fast-rope descent from a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft or tower. The appropriate fast-rope techniques for use in HRST Operations are discussed within MCRP 3-11.4\_, Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations. MCRP 3-11.4\_ must be used as the primary reference for completion of this task.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft or tower, T/E, HRST equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To reach the deck without injury to self or loss/damage to equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect equipment.
2. Prepare equipment.
3. Descend fast-rope on command.



**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42C Marine Corps Helicopter/Tiltrotor Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) and Cast Operations Policy and Program Administration
2. MV-22 HRST/HELOCAST Interim authority to operate

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**AIRCRAFT:** CH-53, UH-1, MV-22, H-60

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Rappel Tower, Landing zone

**EQUIPMENT:** HRST equipment (per reference #2)

---

**FAST-HRST-2003:** Rig for fast-roping operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This task requirement will provide the HRST Master with the ability to correctly rig for a fast-rope descent from a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft or tower. The appropriate fast-rope techniques for use in HRST Operations are discussed within Chapters 3 & 5, MCRP 3-11.4\_, Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations. MCRP 3-11.4\_ must be used as the primary reference for completion of this task.

**BILLETS:** HRST Master

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft or tower, HRST equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To prevent injury to HRST participants or loss/damage to equipment

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect the aircraft or tower and all attachment points.
2. Select equipment.
3. Inspect equipment.
4. Attach equipment.
5. Ensure Safety Insert Officer (SIO) inspects rigging for correct installation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42\_ Marine Corps Helicopter/Tiltrotor Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) and Cast Operations Policy and Program Administration
2. MV-22 HRST/HELOCAST Interim authority to operate

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**AIRCRAFT:** CH-53, UH-1, MV-22, H-60

**EQUIPMENT:** HRST equipment (per reference #2)

---

**FAST-HRST-2004:** Manage fast-rope operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This task requirement will provide the HRST Master with the ability to correctly manage fast-rope operations from a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft or tower. The appropriate techniques for fast-roping in HRST Operations are discussed within MCRP 3-11.4\_, Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations. MCRP 3-11.4\_ must be used as the primary reference for completion of this task.

**BILLETS:** HRST Master

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft or rappel tower, HRST equipment, a radio, T/E, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To prevent injury to HRST participants or loss/damage to equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure installation inspection is conducted by Safety Insert Officer (SIO).
2. Give HRST briefs (Aircrew and members).
3. Supervise donning of individual HRST equipment.
4. Demonstrate one complete cycle of the training to be accomplished, if required.
5. Communicate with aircraft.
6. Deploy rope.
7. Control roper point.
8. Perform emergency procedures, if required.
9. Recover system.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42\_ Marine Corps Helicopter/Tiltrotor Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) and Cast Operations Policy and Program Administration
2. MV-22 HRST/HELOCAST Interim authority to operate

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**AIRCRAFT:** CH-53, UH-1, MV-22, H-60

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Rappel Tower

**EQUIPMENT:** Communication Equipment, HRST equipment (per reference #2)

---

**FAST-HRST-2005:** Supervise the safety of HRST operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This task requirement will provide the Safety Insert Officer (SIO) with the ability to supervise the safety of HRST operations. The applicable SIO duties, procedures, and factors to be considered are discussed within MCRP 3-11.4\_, Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations. MCRP 3-11.4\_ must be used as the primary reference for completion of this task.

**BILLETS:** Safety Insert Officer (SIO)

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a helicopter/tilt-rotor aircraft or tower, HRST equipment, a radio, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To prevent injury to HRST participants or loss/damage to equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect equipment.
2. Inspect all rigging for proper installation.
3. Give final clearance for all HRST operations.
4. Observe all operations.
5. Communicate with aircrew.
6. Cease operations, if necessary.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42C Marine Corps Helicopter/Tiltrotor Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) and Cast Operations Policy and Program Administration
2. MV-22 HRST/HELOCAST Interim authority to operate

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**AIRCRAFT:** CH-53, UH-1, MV-22, H-60

**EQUIPMENT:** Mack and HRST equipment (per reference #2)

---

**FAST-HRST-2006:** Maintain helicopter rope suspension techniques (HRST) equipment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This task requirement will provide the HRST Master with the ability to maintain HRST equipment. The appropriate SIO duties, procedures, and factors to be considered are discussed within MCRP 3-11.4\_, Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations. MCRP 3-11.4\_ must be used as the sole reference for completion of this task.

**BILLETS:** HRST Master

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given HRST equipment and cleaning materials, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To maintain serviceability and accountability of HRST equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inventory equipment.
2. Manage unserviceable equipment.
3. Cut nylon ropes/tape for specific use.
4. Maintain equipment.
5. Maintain equipment records.
6. Issue HRST components based on specific use.
7. Stow equipment.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42C Marine Corps Helicopter/Tiltrotor Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) and Cast Operations Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-01B.1 Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations
3. TM 72101A-14 Principle Technical Characteristics and Components List of Helicopter Rope Suspension Equipment

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** HRST Locker

---

**FAST-NLW-2001:** Employ mechanical advantage control hold (MACH) techniques

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a non-compliant individual, and all required equipment in accordance with escalation of force procedures.

**STANDARD:** To control a subject while preventing injury to yourself or others.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Execute the basic stance.
2. Execute compliant escort position.
3. Execute MACH 1-5 techniques.
4. Execute basic baton techniques.
5. Execute baton MACH 2-5 techniques.
6. Execute MACH 1-5 takedown techniques.
7. Execute baton MACH 2-5 takedown techniques.
8. Execute MACH 1-5 team arrests techniques.
9. Apply hand restraint devices.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-19.15 Civil Disturbance Operations
  2. FM 3-22.40 Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Tactical Employment of Nonlethal Weapons
  3. MEMO 75/683,986 Controlled F.O.R.C.E. Mechanical Advantage Control Holds
- 

**FAST-NLW-2002:** Perform duties as control force commander

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a civil disturbance with multiple non-compliant individuals, a FAST unit, and all required equipment in accordance with escalation of force procedures.

**STANDARD:** To maneuver a control force.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Form the control force.
2. Declare use of force.
3. Conduct control force techniques.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DODD 3000.3-R Policy for Non-lethal Weapons
  2. FM 3-19.15 Civil Disturbance Operations
  3. FM 3-22.40 Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Tactical Employment of Nonlethal Weapons
- 

**FAST-TACT-2001:** Employ a diversionary device

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a FAST platoon.

**STANDARD:** To achieve impact within 3-5 feet from the entry point.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect the diversionary device.
2. Apply weapons conditions.
3. Show the diversionary device to the team members.
4. Identify the target area.
5. Place the diversionary device.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
2. MEU (SOC) Training Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	2 charges per Marine

---

**MCSF-ATFP-2001:** Conduct vehicle search

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary personal equipment, while serving as a member at an entry control point

**STANDARD:** To ensure no vehicles, personnel, or contraband without proper authorization enter the secured area.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify search, security, and overwatch areas.
2. Conduct personnel identification procedures.
3. Control vehicle's approach and entry to control point.
4. Control vehicle's occupants.
5. Separate occupants from vehicle, if required.
6. Utilize driver to systematically open all vehicle doors and compartments, if required.
7. Separate driver from vehicle.
8. Systematically search vehicle interior and exterior.
9. Conduct security response procedures, if required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
2. MCO 1500.54B Marine Corps Martial Arts Program

3. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
4. MCRP 4-11.8D Detainee Operations
5. OPNAVINST 5530.14 Navy Physical Security

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOJT Collective Training Facility (Small)

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** ISMT/Battle simulations

---

**MCSF-ATFP-2002:** Conduct Threat and Vulnerability Assessment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** FAST platoon commanders and platoon sergeants possess the skill set to determine field-environment based vulnerability assessments of DOD and DOS facilities when provided recent threat reporting and intelligence information. Their recommendations can be used to increase the force protection posture of bases, facilities, and installations. This specialized knowledge and skill set will assist in FAST integration with both DOD and DOS facilities worldwide.

**GRADES:** SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given the references, current threat assessments a designated facility or asset, during all Force Protection conditions

**STANDARD:** To identify vulnerabilities and mitigate threats.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify the threats.
2. Assess each threat based on likelihood and potential consequences.
3. Review previous vulnerability assessments.
4. Identify resources (materiel and personnel) required to conduct the assessment.
5. Utilize one of the recommended vulnerability assessment tools.
6. Conduct on-site survey of all critical assets.

7. Conduct on-site survey of all critical infrastructures.
8. Conduct vulnerability assessment IAW DoD O-2000.12-H and/or the Joint Operating Forces Handbook.
9. Brief threat assessment to Commander.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DOD Instruction 2000.16 DoD Anti-Terrorism (AT) Standards
2. DoD O-2000.12H DoD Antiterrorism Handbook
3. Joint Staff Anti-terrorism Program Assessment Benchmarks
4. Joint Staff Defense Threat Reduction Agency (DTRA) Vulnerability Assessment Benchmarks
5. JP 3-07.2 Antiterrorism

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. Conduct a vulnerability-based analysis of mission-essential assets, resources, and personnel critical to mission success that are susceptible to terrorist attack.

---

**MCSF-ATFP-2003:** Conduct personnel search

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary personal equipment, while serving as a member at an entry control point.

**STANDARD:** to ensure no personnel or contraband enter the secured area without authorization.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify search, security, and overwatch areas.
2. Conduct personnel identification procedures.
3. Control individual's approach and entry to control point, observing for any noticeable threats.
4. Allow entry of (1) individual at a time.
5. Utilizing a cover man with a 90 degree off-set, move individual to a search area.
6. Systematically search individual, maintaining a cover man with 90 degree off-set.
7. Conduct security response procedures, if required.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 4-11.8D Detainee Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

DODIC

QUANTITY



A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** ISMT/Battle simulations

---

**MCSF-CBRN-2001:** Maintain CBRN detection, decontamination, and individual protective equipment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a complete M-50 Joint Service General Purpose Mask with carrier, packaged CBRN Individual Protective Equipment, SL-3 complete detection and decontamination equipment, and a checklist

**STANDARD:** In a serviceable status in accordance with technical manuals.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Lay equipment on a clean, dry surface.
2. Use the checklist to inspect each item.
3. Report results of inspection to leadership as needed.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 11075A Operator's Manual for RSDL
  2. TM 3-4230-236-10 Operator's Manual for Decontamination Kit, M100 Sorbent Decontamination System (SDS)
  3. TM 8415-10/3 Operator's Manual for the JSLIST
- 

**MCSF-CBRN-2002:** React to a CBRN attack

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an actual/simulated CBRN attack, an M-50 Joint Service General Purpose Mask, a complete set of CBRN Individual Protective Equipment, a service weapon, individual field equipment, and an operations order while at any level of Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)

**STANDARD:** In order to don mask within 9 seconds and MOPP-4 within 8 minutes without failing primary mission.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Recognize attack.
2. Don M-50 JSGPM.
3. Pass alarm to others in the area and the COC.
4. Conduct immediate decontamination.
5. Don MOPP-4.
6. Transmit CBRN-1 report.
7. Resume primary mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
  2. MCWP 3-37.2 MTTP for NBC Protection
- 

**MCSF-CBRN-2003:** Provide aid to casualties of CBRN agents

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an actual/simulated CBRN attack, an M-50 Joint Service General Purpose Mask, a complete set of CBRN Individual Protective Equipment, a service weapon, individual field equipment, a Nerve Agent Antidote Kit Trainer, and an operations order while at MOPP-4

**STANDARD:** to prevent further injury or death.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Recognize casualty of CBRN agent.
2. Properly mask casualty.
3. Administer immediate care if indicated.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 10-10E.4 CBRN Threats and Hazards
  2. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
  3. MCWP 3-37.2 MTTPs for NBC Protection
-

**MCSF-CBRN-2004:** Operate in a Chemical, Biological, Radiological, Nuclear (CBRN) Environment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a CBRN environment, MOPP gear, MARK I Nerve Agent Antidote Kit (NAAK), and a decontamination kit, while wearing a fighting load

**STANDARD:** To mitigate possible contamination while continuing the assigned mission.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Perform operator maintenance for a field protective mask.
2. Assume a MOPP level posture.
3. Drink from a canteen.
4. Perform immediate decontamination, as necessary.
5. Perform self-aid for a nerve agent, as necessary.
6. Perform MOPP gear exchange, as necessary.
7. Perform individual actions at a decontamination site.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination (FM 3-5)
2. TM 09204G/09205G-OI/1 Operator & Field Maintenance Manual for M50 Mask

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**EQUIPMENT:**

1. MOPP suits/NBC equipment
  2. M50 field protective mask
  3. Poncho
  4. Currently fielded individual decontamination kit
  5. MARK I Nerve Agent Antidote Kit (NAAK)
- 

**MCSF-COMM-2001:** Perform reporting procedures

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** While serving as a sentry in a permissive or non-permissive environment with all required equipment, a mission, and reportable information

**STANDARD:** To communicate mission essential information.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Submit a SITREP.

2. Submit a SALUTE report.
3. Submit an IED/ UXO report.
4. Submit a CASEVAC request.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 5500.6H Arming of Law Enforcement and Security Personnel and the Use of Force
2. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
3. MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling
4. SECNAVINST 5500.29\_ Use of Force by Personnel Engaged in Law Enforcement and Security duties

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**MATERIAL:** FM 24-19 Radio Operator's Handbook

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This task can be trained to standard through the use of the Virtual Battlefield System 2 (VBS2).

---

**MCSF-COMM-2002:** Submit a helicopter landing zone brief

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a map, location for a landing zone, and a radio with frequency

**STANDARD:** To report each of the items of information.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Transmit mission number.
2. Transmit location of landing zone.
3. Transmit unit call sign.
4. Transmit of method of helicopter landing zone marking.
5. Transmit wind direction and velocity.
6. Transmit the elevation, size, and shape of the landing zone.
7. Transmit location, size, and type of any obstacles.
8. Transmit friendly positions.
9. Transmit known and suspected enemy positions.
10. Transmit time, direction, and distance of last enemy fire received.
11. Transmit approach and retirement directions.
12. Transmit quantity of personnel and equipment.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 2-10A.7 Reconnaissance Reports Guide
2. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

---

**MCSF-COMM-2003:** Communicate with a signal plan

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary personal equipment, while in support of a mission

**STANDARD:** Ensuring orders are understood.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Execute the hand-and-arm signals for individual actions/commands.
2. Execute the hand-and-arm signals for team/squad/platoon formations.
3. Execute the hand-and-arm signals for weapons commands.
4. Execute the hand-and-arm signals for battle drills.
5. Employ visible and infrared light signals.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
2. MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**EQUIPMENT:**

1. Military flash light, red lens capable.
  2. Night vision devices.
  3. Chemlights.
- 

**MCSF-COMM-2004:** Conduct inter-squad communications.

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary personal equipment, communication assets, and the requirement to execute command and control

**STANDARD:** To establish communication within the platoon.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine the communications asset(s) available. (PRC-148's, PRC 152's, XTS 5000's)

2. Ensure proper frequencies/Net id's are available/requested. (refer to CEOI/Guard chart)
3. Ensure proper crypto is available for the specific asset you have. (refer to CEOI)
4. Ensure gear is SL-3 complete.
5. Perform LTI before operation.
6. Load both crypto and frequencies into the radios before scheduled departure time.
7. Brief squad on basic troubleshooting procedures and available frequencies.
8. Conduct inter-squad communications.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 6-22C RADIO OPERATOR'S HANDBOOK

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**EQUIPMENT:**

---

**MCSF-CPP-2001:** Engage stationary threats (night)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service pistol, magazines, flashlight, magazine pouch, ammunition, target, holster and personal protective equipment (PPE),

**STANDARD:** To eliminate threats while achieving a passing score of 48 on the Combat Pistol Program (CPP) Table Two, in accordance with MCO 3574.2\_.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the pistol IAW the four weapons safety rules.
2. Assume a carry with the pistol and flashlight.
3. Identify a threat using the flashlight.
4. Present the pistol to the threat while assuming a firing position.
5. Employ flashlight engagement techniques.
6. Engage threats using Precision Shot, Controlled Pair, and Failure to stop techniques.
7. Apply immediate or remedial action, as required.
8. Search and Assess.
9. Maintain a Condition 1 weapon.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
2. MCRP 8-10B.3 Pistol Marksmanship

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	120 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17502 Non-Standard Small Arms Range  
Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range  
Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Load-bearing equipment is in accordance with billet and unit.
  2. This task is performed as required by billet duties.
  3. This task should incorporate dry practice and simulation via individual small-arms marksmanship trainer (ISMT) prior to the expenditure of live rounds.
- 

**MCSF-CPP-2002:** Engage multiple stationary threats

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service pistol, magazines, magazine pouch, ammunition, targets, holster and personal protective equipment (PPE)

**STANDARD:** To eliminate threats while achieving a passing score of 60 on the Combat Pistol Program (CPP) Table Three in accordance with MCO 3574.2.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the pistol IAW the four weapons safety rules.
2. Identify threats.
3. Prioritize threats.
4. Present the pistol to a threat while assuming a firing position (standing, kneeling).
5. Execute methods of engaging multiple threats.
6. Execute speed or tactical reload as necessary.
7. Apply immediate or remedial action, as required.
8. Search and Assess.
9. Maintain a Condition 1 weapon.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
2. MCRP 8-10B.3 Pistol Marksmanship

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
------------------	--------------------	------------------	------------------------	--------------	-----------

Yes                      S/L                      ISMT                      Marine Hours                      2                      N

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	100 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17502 Non-Standard Small Arms Range  
Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range  
Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Load-bearing equipment is in accordance with billet and unit.
  2. This task is performed as required by billet duties.
  3. This task should incorporate dry practice and simulation via individual small-arms marksmanship trainer (ISMT) prior to the expenditure of live rounds.
- 

**MCSF-CPP-2003:** Engage moving threats

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service pistol, magazines, magazine pouch, and ammunition, moving targets, holster and personal protective equipment (PPE)

**STANDARD:** To eliminate threats while achieving a passing score of 60 on the Combat Pistol Program (CPP) Table four in accordance with MCO 3574.2\_.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the pistol IAW the four weapons safety rules.
2. Identify threats.
3. Prioritize threats.
4. Present the pistol to a threat while assuming a firing position.
5. Apply appropriate lead (based on distance and speed).
6. Execute the tracking method of engaging moving threats.
7. Execute speed or tactical reload as necessary.
8. Apply immediate or remedial action, as required.
9. Search and Assess.
10. Maintain a Condition 1 weapon.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
2. MCRP 8-10B.3 Pistol Marksmanship



**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	L/S	ISMT	Marine Hours	2	N

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	150 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17502 Non-Standard Small Arms Range  
Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range  
Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Load-bearing equipment is in accordance with billet and unit.
  2. This task is performed as required by billet duties.
  3. This task should incorporate dry practice and simulation via individual small-arms marksmanship trainer (ISMT) prior to the expenditure of live rounds.
- 

**MCSF-CPP-2004:** Engage threats from barricade positions

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service pistol, magazines, magazine pouch, ammunition, targets, support, holster and personal protective equipment (PPE)

**STANDARD:** To eliminate threats while achieving a passing score of 60 on the Combat Pistol Program (CPP) Table Five in accordance with MCO 3574.2.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the pistol IAW the four weapons safety rules.
2. Identify threats from behind cover.
3. Prioritize threats.
4. Present the pistol to the threat while assuming firing positions (Standing, Kneeling, and Prone).
5. Use available support.
6. Apply stand off as required.
7. Execute methods of engaging multiple threats.
8. Execute speed or tactical reload as necessary.

9. Apply immediate or remedial action, as required.
10. Search and Assess.
11. Maintain a Condition 1 weapon.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2 Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
2. MCRP 8-10B.3 Pistol Marksmanship

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	2	N

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	100 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17502 Non-Standard Small Arms Range  
Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range  
Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Load-bearing equipment is in accordance with billet and unit.
2. This task is performed as required by billet duties.
3. This task should incorporate dry practice and simulation via individual small-arms marksmanship trainer (ISMT) prior to the expenditure of live rounds.

---

**MCSF-CPP-2005:** Employ the pistol while moving

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service pistol, magazines, magazine pouch, ammunition, targets, holster and personal protective equipment (PPE).

**STANDARD:** To eliminate threats while achieving a passing score of 60 on the Combat Pistol Program (CPP) Table Six in accordance with MCO 3574.2.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the pistol IAW the four weapons safety rules.

2. Identify threats.
3. Prioritize threats.
4. Pivot toward the threat while presenting the pistol and assuming a firing position.
5. Present the pistol to the threat while moving (forward, laterally, and backward).
6. Engage threats using Precision Shot, Controlled Pair, and Failure to stop techniques.
7. Move from one position to another.
8. Execute speed or tactical reload as necessary.
9. Apply immediate or remedial action, as required.
10. Search and Assess.
11. Maintain a Condition 1 weapon.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
2. MCRP 8-10B.3 Pistol Marksmanship

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	100 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17502 Non-Standard Small Arms Range  
Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range  
Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Load-bearing equipment is in accordance with billet and unit.
2. This task is performed as required by billet duties.
3. This task should incorporate dry practice and simulation via individual small-arms marksmanship trainer (ISMT) prior to the expenditure of live rounds.

---

**MCSF-CPP-2006:** Engage threats when transitioning from a rifle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service pistol, magazines, magazine pouch, ammunition, target, holster, service rifle and personal protective equipment (PPE)

**STANDARD:** To eliminate threats while achieving a passing score of 60 on the Combat Pistol Program (CPP) Table Seven in accordance with MCO 3574.2.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle rifle and pistol IAW the four weapons safety rules.
2. Assume a combat shooting stance or carry with the rifle.
3. Identify a threat.
4. Identify a need to transition.
5. Transition to the pistol.
6. Present the pistol to a threat while assuming a firing position.
7. Engage threats using Precision Shot, Controlled Pair, and Failure to stop techniques.
8. Conduct a speed or tactical reload as required.
9. Perform immediate or remedial action, as required.
10. Apply corrective action with the service rifle, and immediate or remedial action with the service pistol as required.
11. Search and Assess.
12. Maintain the weapon in condition 1.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
2. MCRP 8-10B.3 Pistol Marksmanship

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	40 rounds per Marine
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	44 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17502 Non-Standard Small Arms Range  
Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range  
Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Load-bearing equipment is in accordance with billet and unit.
2. This task is performed as required by billet duties.
3. This task should incorporate dry practice and simulation via individual small-arms marksmanship trainer (ISMT) prior to the expenditure of live rounds.

---

**MCSF-CPP-2007:** Engage threats in close proximity

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service pistol, magazines, magazine pouch, ammunition, target, holster and personal protective equipment (PPE)

**STANDARD:** To eliminate threats while achieving a passing score of 60 on the Combat Pistol Program (CPP) Table Eight in accordance with MCO 3574.2\_.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the pistol IAW the four weapons safety rules.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Employ point shooting techniques.
4. Gain space.
5. Close space.
6. Conduct a speed or tactical reload as required.
7. Perform immediate or remedial action as required.
8. Search and Assess.
9. Maintain a Condition 1 weapon.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
2. MCRP 8-10B.3 Pistol Marksmanship

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	150 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17502 Non-Standard Small Arms Range  
Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range  
Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Load-bearing equipment is in accordance with billet and unit.
2. This task is performed as required by billet duties.
3. This task should incorporate dry practice and simulation via individual small-arms marksmanship trainer (ISMT) prior to the expenditure of live rounds.

---

**MCSF-CSS-2001:** Perform tactical field care on a casualty

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a casualty, while wearing a fighting load

**STANDARD:** To prevent further injury or death.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure that you and the casualty are no longer under direct enemy fire.
2. Ensure the tactical situation allows for time to treat casualty before initiating any medical procedures.
3. Identify and control major bleeding.
4. Assess the casualty's airway.
5. Assess the casualty's circulation.
6. Assess the casualty for chest injuries.
7. Assess for climatic injuries (hot or cold).
8. Identify and treat other wounds (dress all wounds, including exit wounds, splint obvious fractures).
9. Evaluate a casualty for shock.
10. Communicate the situation to the unit leader.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-40A.9 First Aid

---

**MCSF-DEF-2001:** Occupy a listening/observation post (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a mission to establish a listening/observation post and required equipment, while wearing a fighting load

**STANDARD:** To provide early detection of enemy contact.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Depart friendly lines.
2. Move by cover and concealed route to the vicinity of the listening/observation post.
3. Conduct reconnaissance of tentative listening/observation post.
4. Occupy listening/observation post.
5. Establish security.
6. Establish communications.
7. Listen/observe for activity.
8. Report activity to higher.
9. Move listening/observation post as required.
10. Execute evacuation plan as required.
11. Execute relief actions.

**REFERENCES:** MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	0	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**MCSF-DEF-2002:** Defend a position

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a fighting position, assigned weapon, while wearing a fighting load

**STANDARD:** To repel the enemy.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Challenge unidentified personnel.
2. Report information within the sector of fire as necessary.
3. Displace to alternate or supplementary position as ordered.
4. Perform individual continuing actions.
5. Respond to fire commands.
6. Maintain surveillance to the front, flank, and rear.

**REFERENCES:** MCWP 3-11.1\_ Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	30 per Marine

**ORDNANCE NOTES:** A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event can be trained/augmented through the use of the following enablers: LIVE - ITESS, BES, Role Players, VIRTUAL/CONSTRUCTIVE - DVTE (VBS2)

---

**MCSF-DEF-2003:** Control a fire team in the defense.

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                   **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a fire team, an assigned area or sector from which to defend, and an order, while wearing a fighting load

**STANDARD:** To direct fires within the sector.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Establish security.
2. Position automatic weapons.
3. Assign sectors of fire.
4. Improve fields of fire.
5. Entrench.
6. Submit fire plan sketch.
7. Enforce continuing actions.
8. Report as required.

**REFERENCES:** ATP 3-21.8 Infantry Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. This includes all defensive operations to include MOUT and counter mechanized.

**SIMULATION:** This event can be trained/augmented through the use of the following enablers: LIVE - TGTS,VIRTUAL/CONSTRUCTIVE - ISMT, DVTE (VBS2)

---

**MCSF-DEF-2004:** Lead a unit in a defensive (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                   **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a squad and an order,

**STANDARD:** To defend a sector.



**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Begin planning.
2. Conduct reconnaissance of assigned area.
3. Establish local security beyond proposed defensive area.
4. Supervise the occupation of hasty positions.
5. Establish crew served weapon positions, ensuring mutual supporting fires.
6. Coordinate with adjacent units.
7. Ensure units are tied in.
8. Cover dead space by indirect fire.
9. Designate primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.
10. Ensure communications are established between teams and to listening post/observation posts (LP/OP).
11. Plan final protective fires.
12. Supervise the construction of a barrier plan.
13. Collect fire team fire plan sketches and crew-served attachment's range cards.
14. Submit consolidated squad fire plan sketch to platoon commander.
15. Report as required.
16. Supervise continuing actions.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This includes all defensive operations (e.g. MOUT and counter mechanized).

**SIMULATION:** This event can be trained/augmented through the use of the following enablers: LIVE - TGTS, VIRTUAL/CONSTRUCTIVE - ISMT, DVTE (VBS2)

---

**MCSF-DEF-2005:** Apply the continuum of force

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** While serving as a sentry in a permissive or non-permissive environment with all required equipment, in any situation requiring the use of force.

**STANDARD:** In order to preserve order, protect property, and enforce regulations in accordance with the established rules of engagement.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assess temper and intent of personnel.
2. Apply appropriate response procedures.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DODD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual
2. MCO 1500.54B Marine Corps Martial Arts Program
3. MCO 5500.6H Arming of Law Enforcement and Security Personnel and the Use of Force

---

**MCSF-DEF-2006:** Stand post

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** While assigned to the guard force.

**STANDARD:** In order to preserve order, protect property, and enforce regulations in accordance with the established rules of engagement.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Participate in guard mount.
2. Assume post.
3. Conduct challenging procedures.
4. Execute reporting procedures.
5. Maintain the logbook/range card if applicable.
6. Conduct battle drills.
7. Apply the continuum of force.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DoDD 5210.41M Nuclear Weapons Security Manual
2. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
3. MCO 1500.54B Marine Corps Martial Arts Program
4. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
5. SECNAVINST 5500.29\_ Use of Force by Personnel Engaged in Law Enforcement and Security duties

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 per Marine

A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** ISMT/Battle simulations

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** The performance step conduct battle drills includes but not limited to: CBRN, small arms fire, sniper fire, IEDs, IDF, mass casualty, perimeter breach, and civil disturbance.

---

**MCSF-DEF-2007:** Establish a post

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a weapon system, an assigned sector of fire, available force protection material, communication capability, and a range card

**STANDARD:** To provide observation and fire within a sector.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a position that achieves interlocking fields of fire.
2. Maintain Security.
3. Make maximum use of cover and concealment.
4. Assign sectors of fire.
5. Assign PDF or FPL, if required.
6. Designate target reference points (TRP), if required.
7. Maintain the logbook/range card, if required.
8. Conduct battle drills.
9. Conduct post reporting.
10. Apply the continuum of force.
11. Conduct turn-over as required.
12. Use force protection materials available to provide reinforcement of area below, around, and above post position, if possible.
13. Camouflage position.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
2. MCO 1500.54B Marine Corps Martial Arts Program
3. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
4. SECNAVINST 5500.29\_ Use of Force by Personnel Engaged in Law Enforcement and Security duties

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** ISMT/Battle simulations

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** The performance step conduct battle drills includes but not limited to: CBRN, small arms fire, sniper fire, IEDs, IDF, mass casualty, perimeter breach, and civil disturbance.

---

**MCSF-DEF-2008:** Conduct guard mount

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Assigned as the Corporal or Sergeant of the Guard

**STANDARD:** To ensure guard force members are present, mentally and physically capable to assume an assigned post.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Form for guard mount.
2. Brief the guard.
3. Inspect the guard.
4. Apply weapons condition.
5. Post/relieve the guard.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 22-6 Guard Duty
  2. MCO 5530.15 U.S. Marine Corps Interior Guard Manual
-

**MCSF-DEF-2009:** Prepare a fire plan sketch or overlay (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an order, a sector of fire, and a fighting position organized on the ground.

**STANDARD:** To validate the defensive scheme of maneuver, report the unit's defensive plan to higher, coordinate with adjacent units, and facilitate relief in place.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Illustrate all fighting positions.
2. Illustrate ECP/VCP.
3. Illustrate sectors of fire.
4. Illustrate principle direction of fire for the squad automatic weapons.
5. Illustrate crew-served weapon positions and their PDFs or FPLs.
6. Illustrate dead space.
7. Illustrate DM positions.
8. Illustrate obstacles.
9. Illustrate terrain.
10. Illustrate threat reference points.
11. Illustrate building numbers.
12. Annotate magnetic north.
13. Annotate unit designation.
14. Annotate time and date of preparation.

**REFERENCES:** MCWP 7-1 Fire Support Coordination

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** If applicable, include non-lethal ammunition ranges.

**MCSF-DEF-2010:** Employ a Machine gun in the Defense

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an order, a machine gun qualified 8152, and a mounted SL-3 complete machine gun.

**STANDARD:** To ensure correct geometry of fires and weapons placement in support of the assigned mission.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine method of support and tentative primary defensive positions.
2. Determine type of fires to be employed, target precedence, and engagement criteria.
3. Direct emplacement of machinegun to best support defense.
4. Ensure sector stakes are emplaced and cannot be knocked down easily.
5. Ensure firing platform is large enough to support the machinegun.
6. Ensure platform is six to ten inches deep.
7. Ensure the machinegun is laid on either the FPL or the PDF as assigned.
8. Ensure the parapet is a minimum of 1 meter in width and high enough to
9. Conceal the crew from the flanks and rear.
10. Ensure position is at least armpit deep.
11. Ensure weapon system is stabilized through use of SL-3 components.
12. Ensure the position is camouflaged.
13. Ensure the position is concealed from enemy air observation.
14. If time and materials are available, ensure overhead cover has been constructed.
15. Compile completed range card(s), and ensure integration of fires, in accordance with defensive plan.
16. Identify alternate and supplementary positions.
17. Supervise registration of range card data, if practicable.
18. Supervise delivery of fires for the defense and counterattack.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This includes all defensive operations, to include MOUT and site security.

**MCSF-DEF-2011:** Conduct a defense

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** In a combat environment, with the aid of references, given a specified facility, position or installation to protect, a MCSF unit, and a combat load.

**STANDARD:** In order to defend against enemy actions.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Determine appropriate defensive technique.
3. Conduct planning.
4. Integrate attachments, as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Conduct tactical logistics.
7. Prepare for combat.
8. Occupy the defense.
9. Conduct linkup with adjacent forces, as required.
10. Execute command and control.
11. Execute security plan.
12. Execute priorities of work.
13. Integrate least engaged unit into the defense, as necessary.
14. Execute the scheme of maneuver and fire support plan.
15. Conduct consolidation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCRP 3-41.1A MAGTF Rear Area Security
3. MCTP 10-10F Military Police Operations
4. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17740 Squad Defense Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Plans should incorporate barrier plans, primary and alternate positions, and inner locking fields of fire.

---

**MCSF-DM-2001:** Perform weapons handling procedures with the designated marksman rifle system

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a designated marksman rifle weapon system and ammunition,

**STANDARD:** In accordance with the four safety rules.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Demonstrate weapon carries and transports.
3. Demonstrate the assembly and positioning of the sling.
4. Load the rifle.
5. Unload the rifle.
6. Clear the rifle.
7. Apply immediate action.
8. Apply remedial action.
9. Demonstrate weapons conditions.
10. Manipulate/adjust bipod as needed.
11. Manipulate/adjust stock as needed.

**REFERENCES:** TM 11920A-OR M110 MK11MOD2 SASS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A135 Cartridge, 7.62mm Dummy M63	10 per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Ammunition is not expended for this event.
2. The weapon must be stored without tension on the firing pin spring.
3. Ensure the weapon is stored in a manner that will prevent damage to the scope or the weapon, such as a climate controlled armory with individual racks.



**MCSF-DM-2002:** Perform preventative maintenance on the designated marksman rifle system

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a designated marksman rifle system, operator's manual, approved cleaning equipment, cleaning solvents and lubricants.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the weapon is operational.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Place the weapon in condition 4.
2. Disassemble the rifle.
3. Clean the rifle.
4. Lubricate the rifle.
5. Assemble the rifle.
6. Perform a function check.
7. Make entries in/review the gun record book.
8. Ensure the SL-3 gear is clean and serviceable.
9. Inspect weapon.
10. Prepare weapon for field use.
11. Prepare and submit weapon for SAPM/LTI/PFI.

**REFERENCES:** TM 11920A-OR M110 MK11MOD2 SASS

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. The Designated Marksman must know the designated marksman weapon system characteristics and understand the cycle of operation.
2. The Designated Marksman must know the proper torque settings for his assigned weapon.

---

**MCSF-DM-2003:** Perform operator maintenance for optics

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an optical device, approved cleaning equipment and materials.

**STANDARD:** To ensure that optics are operational.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect the optics and accessories for defects and serviceability.
2. Operate optics.
3. Clean the optics (and lens).
4. Lubricate appropriate parts.
5. Disassemble and assemble optical equipment.
6. Report damaged/defective optics.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 11085B-OR/1 Operators Manual for Sight, Night Vision Sniper Scope (AN/PVS-27)
  2. TM 11901A-OR M71 SCOUT SNIPER OBSERVATION TELESCOPE
  3. TM 11920A-OR M110 MK11MOD2 SASS
- 

**MCSF-DM-2004:** Zero the designated marksman rifle system

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a designated marksman weapon system, an observer, 20 rounds of ammunition, a target at 100 yards, and wearing the directed body armor protection level.

**STANDARD:** To achieve point of aim/point of impact within 1 Minute of Angle (MOA).

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure the lever lock toggles are tight.
2. Place scope on initial elevation and windage.
3. Achieve focus and remove parallax.
4. Assume a supported firing position.
5. Prepare for firing.
6. Fire a cold bore shot and record impact location.
7. Fire a 3 round group.
8. Record information in the data book.
9. Analyze data.
10. Apply required adjustments to scope.
11. Fire a second zeroing group (repeating steps 7 through 10).
12. Once point of aim/point of impact has been achieved, slip elevation and windage turrets to zeroing range.
13. Fire a 3 round shot group to confirm zero.

14. Repeat steps 1 through 9 to record shift in impacts without the suppressor.
15. Record the zeroes for the suppressor on and off into the data book.
16. Make appropriate entries (round count) into gun record book.

**REFERENCES:** TM 11920A-OR M110 MK11MOD2 SASS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	20 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

---

**MCSF-DM-2005:** Predict cold bore placement

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a designated marksman weapon system, data book, one round of ammunition, spotting scope, a target at a known distance and wearing the directed body armor protection level.

**STANDARD:** To ensure first round hit within one minute of angle from point of aim.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify the target.
2. Determine ballistics and weather to hit target.
3. Engage target.
4. Analyze placement of cold bore shot.
5. Record current cold bore data.
6. Make entries in gun record book.
7. Make entries in data book.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling
2. TM 11901A-OR M71 SCOUT SNIPER OBSERVATION TELESCOPE
3. TM 11920A-OR M110 MK11MOD2 SASS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	20 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

---

**MCSF-DM-2006:** Engage targets with the designated marksman rifle system at known distances

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a designated marksman weapon system, 49 rounds of ammunition, an observer with a spotting scope, targets at ranges from 100 to 600 yards, a field protective mask, and wearing the directed body armor protection level.

**STANDARD:** To achieve 80 percent accuracy.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assume a supported prone firing position.
2. Prepare for firing.
3. Determine ballistic settings based on weather and other conditions and adjust scope turrets accordingly.
4. Utilize DM/observer dialogue.
5. Determine method of engagement for present conditions.
6. Engage stationary targets at 100 yards (5 rounds) while wearing a field protective mask in a time limit of 1 minute per round.
7. Engage stationary targets at 100 yards (3 rounds), 200 yards (3 rounds), 300 yards (3 rounds), 400 yards (3 rounds), 500 yards (3 rounds), 600 yards (3 rounds), in a time limit of 1 minute per round.
8. Engage moving targets at 100, 200, 300, 400, and 500 yards while the target is moving 2 to 4 MPH for a span of 10 meters with 2 rounds per yard line.
9. Engage limited exposure target with 2 rounds at 300, 400, 500, 600 yards (target is exposed twice for 5 seconds).
10. Assess the situation as required.

11. Make appropriate entries into gun record book and data book.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 11901A-OR M71 SCOUT SNIPER OBSERVATION TELESCOPE
2. TM 11920A-OR M110 MK11MOD2 SASS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	49 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

---

**MCSF-DM-2007:** Engage targets with the designated marksman rifle system at unknown distances

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a zeroed designated marksman weapon system, ammunition, an observer with a spotting scope, data book, 10 targets at distances from 100 to 600 yards, and wearing the directed body armor level.

**STANDARD:** To achieve 80% accuracy.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assume supported firing position.
2. Prepare a range card.
3. Assess weather conditions and estimate ballistics to hit targets and adjust scope turrets accordingly.
4. Prepare for firing.
5. Engage static and moving targets as required at various ranges with 2 rounds per target.
6. Utilize DM/observer dialogue.
7. Assess the situation.
8. Record and analyze information in data book.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 11901A-OR M71 SCOUT SNIPER OBSERVATION TELESCOPE

2. TM 11920A-OR M110 MK11MOD2 SASS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	20 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** A score of 10 is given for first round hits on target. A score of 8 is given for corrected second round hits on targets when first round misses. A score of 0 is given if both rounds miss.

---

**MCSF-DM-2008:** Qualify at various ranges using a limited visibility device

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a zeroed designated marksman weapon system, an inline night observation device, ammunition, an observer with a spotting scope and an inline night observation device, data book, targets at distances from (100 to 500 yards) and wearing the directed body armor level.

**STANDARD:** To achieve 80% accuracy.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assume a supported prone firing position.
2. Prepare for firing.
3. Mount night observation device.
4. Operate controls and indicators.
5. Confirm zero before firing known distance qualification course using a 3 round group (not for score).
6. Determine ballistic settings based on weather and other conditions and adjust scope turrets accordingly.
7. Utilize DM/observer dialogue.
8. Engage stationary targets.

9. Assess the situation.
10. Make appropriate entries into gun record book and data book.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 11085B-OR/1 Operators Manual for Sight, Night Vision Sniper Scope (AN/PVS-27)
2. TM 11901A-OR M71 SCOUT SNIPER OBSERVATION TELESCOPE
3. TM 11920A-OR M110 MK11MOD2 SASS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	13 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** A score of 20 is given for first round hits on target. A score of 16 is given for corrected second round hits on targets when first round misses. A score of 0 is given if both rounds miss.

---

**MCSF-DM-2009:** Conduct observation

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an area to observe, with or without the aid of observation devices, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To detect anomalies.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct a hasty search.
2. Conduct a detailed search.
3. Build Sector Sketch.
4. Establish a baseline.
5. Maintain observation.

6. Record information.
7. Report as required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ISBN-13: 978-1511949835 Operational Culture for the Warfighter: Principles and Applications
2. MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event can be trained using any day/night/thermal observation device, or a combination of devices.
  2. Conducting a memory exercise (Keep In Memory (KIM)) reinforces observation and memory skills. The individual should observe items and identify the size, shape, color, and condition of each item displayed after items have been removed from view.
- 

**MCSF-DM-2010:** Execute surveillance of an objective (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a mission, an objective, information requirement, map or photo, observation log, NATO report formats, observation devices, a sketching kit, radio, and communication log.

**STANDARD:** To satisfy the information requirement.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify target.
2. Draw a panoramic field sketch or photograph the area.
3. Conduct a detailed visual search of the area.
4. Record information of military/tactical importance (SALUTE).
5. Record information utilizing NATO formats.
6. Report information to higher unit.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 2-10A.7 Reconnaissance Reports Guide

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**



<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	Y

---

**MCSF-DM-2011:** Prepare a Designated Marksman range card (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a mission, map, pencil, straight edge, protractor, data book, calculator, spotting scope, and binoculars.

**STANDARD:** Within a time limit of 1 hour.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Estimate distance to targets to within 10% actual distance.
2. Depict reference points.
3. Establish reference point locations.
4. Establish and label 3 sectors.
5. Identify center azimuth.
6. Write marginal data (magnetic, 8 digit grid location, date time group, unit, name of preparer, and method of determining range).
7. Draw terrain features on range card.
8. Write target information (target number, sector of fire, target description, target range, target azimuth, and elevation data).
9. Depict remarks as required (OKOCA-W).

**REFERENCES:** MCWP 3-15.3 Sniping

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**MCSF-DM-2012:** Perform the duties of a Designated Marksman observer (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a shooter, a data book, spotting scope, calculator, designated targets, data charts, and wearing the directed body armor protection level.

**STANDARD:** To provide the shooter with accurate firing solutions.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine distance to targets.
2. Determine wind speed and direction.
3. Determine MET data.
4. Calculate elevation.
5. Calculate wind adjustments.
6. Utilize DM/observer dialogue as required.
7. Observe impacts.
8. Calculate adjustments.
9. Record information in data books as required.

**REFERENCES:** MCWP 3-15.3 Sniping

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	I-TESS (Individual)	Marine Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**MCSF-DM-2013:** Conduct individual actions in a DM Position (DMP) (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a mission, a maneuver area, weapons, ammunition, observers, and mission essential equipment.

**STANDARD:** To eliminate positively identified threats.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Continuously camouflage self, weapons, and equipment.
2. Detect threats/targets on objective.
3. Select a DMP.
4. Ensure fields of fire and observation are clear.
5. Consider lighting conditions.
6. Consider camouflage.
7. Consider backdrop.
8. Conceal/secure non-essential equipment.
9. Observe area of responsibility.
10. Report to higher.
11. Plan egress routes.
12. Engage targets as required.
13. Improve DMP as required.
14. Withdraw from DMP.

**REFERENCES:** MCWP 3-15.3 Sniping

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	Y

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Based on commander's intent, performance steps will be conducted covertly or overtly.

---

**MCSF-DM-2014:** Engage targets with the designated marksman rifle system at various ranges using alternate shooting positions

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a designated marksman weapon system, observer, ammunition, spotting scope, alternate shooting platform, binoculars, data book, targets from 100 to 600 yards at known distances and wearing the directed body armor protection level.

**STANDARD:** To achieve 80% accuracy.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Assume supported firing position.
3. Prepare a range card.
4. Assess weather conditions and estimate ballistics to hit targets and adjust scope turrets accordingly.
5. Prepare for firing.
6. Engage stationary and moving targets.
7. Utilize DM/observer dialogue.
8. Assess the situation.
9. Record and analyze information in data book.
10. Make appropriate gun record book entries.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 11901A-OR M71 SCOUT SNIPER OBSERVATION TELESCOPE
2. TM 11920A-OR M110 MK11MOD2 SASS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	10 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Performance steps should be completed using various shooting positions.
2. Course of fire: 1 target between 100 to 200 yards from the standing, 1 target between 200 to 300 yards from the standing, 1 target between 300 to 400 yards from the kneeling, 1 target between 400 to 500 yards from the kneeling, and 1 target between 500 and 600 yards from the sitting.
3. Score of 20 is given for first round hits on target. Score of 16 is given for corrected second round hits on targets when first round misses. Score of 0 is given when both rounds miss.
4. Limited exposure targets may be used as applicable.

**MCSF-DM-2015:** Engage multiple targets at unknown distances with mil holds

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Mil holds is a form of aiming using the mil dot reticle in the scope without adjusting the turrets while engaging targets.

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a designated marksman weapon system, an observer with a spotting scope, ammunition, targets at unknown distances and wearing the directed body armor protection level.

**STANDARD:** To achieve 80% accuracy.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assume a supported firing position.
2. Prepare a range card and range estimate.
3. Prepare for firing.
4. Estimate ballistics and weather conditions to hit targets.
5. Determine a scope setting to mid-range of targets.
6. Determine mil holds from mid-range of targets.
7. Utilize DM/observer dialogue.
8. Engage targets as required using mil holds and rapid engagement techniques.
9. Assess the situation after each target engagement.
10. Make entries in data book and gun record book.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 11901A-OR M71 SCOUT SNIPER OBSERVATION TELESCOPE
2. TM 11920A-OR M110 MK11MOD2 SASS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	20 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Course of fire: Marines will shoot 2 stages of 5 targets. Each stage will have a time limit of 15 sec per stage with 1 round per target. In both stages targets are steel reactive and will span no more than 500 yards.
  2. Scoring is as follows:
    - a. Timed Scoring Matrix.
      - (1) 20 sec and under equals 25 points.
      - (2) 20.01 sec thru 23 sec equals 20 points.
      - (3) 23.01 sec thru 26 sec equals 15 points.
      - (4) 26.01 sec thru 29 sec equals 10 points.
      - (5) 29.01 sec thru 32 sec equals 5 points.
      - (6) Over 32.01 sec equals 0 points.
    - b. Hit Scoring Matrix.
      - (1) 5 hits equals 25 points.
      - (2) 4 hits equals 20 points.
      - (3) 3 hits equals 15 points.
      - (4) 2 hits equals 10 points.
      - (5) 1 hits equals 5 points.
      - (6) 0 hits equals 0 points.
- 

**MCSF-DM-2016:** Engage targets with a designated marksman weapon system at unknown distances using max point blank

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Max point blank is a form of aiming in which the shooter chooses a midrange DOPE that can engage targets within a certain range bracket by holding center mass without adjusting the turrets while engaging targets.

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a designated marksman weapon system, an observer with a spotting scope, ammunition, targets at unknown distances, and wearing the directed body armor protection level.

**STANDARD:** To achieve 80% accuracy.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Assume a supported firing position.
3. Prepare a range card and range estimate.
4. Prepare for firing.
5. Estimate ballistics and weather conditions to hit targets.
6. Determine a scope setting to mid-range of targets.
7. Utilize DM/observer dialogue.
8. Engage targets as required using max point blank.
9. Assess the situation.

10. Make entries in data book and gun record book.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 11901A-OR M71 SCOUT SNIPER OBSERVATION TELESCOPE
2. TM 11920A-OR M110 MK11MOD2 SASS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	20 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Course of fire: Marines will shoot 2 stages of 5 targets. Each stage will have a time limit of 15 sec per stage with 1 round per target. In both stages targets are steel reactive and will be placed from 100 thru 500 yards.
2. Scoring is as follows:
  - a. Timed Scoring Matrix.
    - (1) 15 sec and under equals 25 points.
    - (2) 15.01 sec thru 18 sec equals 20 points.
    - (3) 18.01 sec thru 21 sec equals 15 points.
    - (4) 21.01 sec thru 24 sec equals 10 points.
    - (5) 24.01 sec thru 27 sec equals 5 points.
    - (6) Over 27.01 sec equals 0 points.
  - b. Hit Scoring Matrix.
    - (1) 5 hits equals 25 points.
    - (2) 4 hits equals 20 points.
    - (3) 3 hits equals 15 points.
    - (4) 2 hits equals 10 points.
    - (5) 1 hits equals 5 points.
    - (6) 0 hits equals 0 points.

---

**MCSF-DM-2017:** Engage targets at an angle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a designated marksman weapon system, ammunition, an observer with a spotting scope, binoculars, protractor, angle finding devices/charts, targets at an angle greater than 15 degrees, and wearing the directed body armor protection level.

**STANDARD:** To achieve 80 percent accuracy.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assume a firing position.
2. Prepare a range card.
3. Measure/Determine angle to target.
4. Determine flat line distance.
5. Estimate ballistics and weather conditions to hit target.
6. Calculate steps 3 through 5 and apply data to scope turrets.
7. Utilize Designated Marksman observer dialogue.
8. Engage targets as required.
9. Assess the situation.
10. Make entries into data book/gun record book.

**REFERENCES:** MCWP 3-15.3 Sniping

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	20 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17560 Sniper Field-Fire Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** A range equipped with robot targets with appropriate number of rounds and repetitions.

---

**MCSF-DM-2018:** Lead a DM unit in support of MCSF operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**BILLETS:** Designated Marksman

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a mission, area of operations, supported unit and mission essential equipment.



**STANDARD:** To satisfy commander's intent in support of the scheme of maneuver.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Advise commander on DM employment considerations.
2. Receive the commander's order.
3. Suggest recommendations/modifications for Designated Marksman employment.
4. Coordinate and prepare.
5. Brief mission.
6. Execute mission.
7. Make reports, as required.
8. Debrief mission.

**REFERENCES:** MCWP 3-15.3 Sniping

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**MCSF-M32-2001:** Perform operator maintenance on a Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a M32A1 Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher, cleaning gear

**STANDARD:** To ensure weapon is operational.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure the grenade launcher is in Condition-4.
2. Disassemble the grenade launcher.
3. Clean the grenade launcher.
4. Inspect the grenade launcher.
5. Lubricate the grenade launcher.
6. Assemble the grenade launcher.
7. Conduct a function check.

**REFERENCES:** TM 11235A-OR Operator's Manual for 40mm Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher, M32

---

**MCSF-M32-2002:** Perform weapons handling procedures for a Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher and ammunition.

**STANDARD:** Without violating the four safety rules.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Clear the weapon.
2. Charge the weapon.
3. Load the weapon.
4. Unload the weapon.

**REFERENCES:** TM 11235A-OR Operator's Manual for 40mm Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher, M32

---

**MCSF-M32-2003:** Bore sight an M32 Multi-Shot 40mm Grenade Launcher

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an M32 Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher, a flat-head screwdriver, a bore sighting chart, crosshair gauge, and headspace gauge.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the reticule is bore sighted.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Place the weapon in a fixed position with the sight set on zero meters.
2. Place the bore sighting wall chart on a flat surface and at the same elevation as the M32.
3. Charge the cylinder and place the crosshair gauge in the muzzle of the M32 barrel.
4. Place the headspace gauge in the chamber aligned with the M32 barrel.
5. Look through the hole in the headspace gauge, match these crosshairs with the bottom cross hairs marked "BORE" on the bore sighting wall chart.
6. Adjust the elevation and windage of the sight until the reticule is aligned with the top crosshair marked "SIGHT" on the bore sighting wall chart.

**REFERENCES:** TM 11235A-OR Operator's Manual for 40mm Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher, M32

---

**MCSF-M32-2004:** Perform misfire procedures on a M32 Multi-Shot 40mm Grenade Launcher

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a M32 Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher that fails to fire, and dummy ammunition.

**STANDARD:** To return the weapon to action.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Fully release trigger and pull the trigger a second time.
2. Wait 30 seconds.
3. If the round fails to fire pull the trigger again and wait an additional 30 seconds.
4. Press the manual release on the index mechanism and continue to fire.
5. Open receiver and unload round.
6. Isolate the round.

**REFERENCES:** TM 11235A-OR Operator's Manual for 40mm Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher, M32

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	1 cartridges per Marine

---

**MCSF-M32-2005:** Zero an M32 Multi-Shot 40mm Grenade Launcher

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a M32 Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher, ammunition, and target at 150 meters.

**STANDARD:** To achieve effects on target within the effective casualty radius of the grenade (5 meters).

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Place the weapon in a stable position.
2. Place sights on 150 meters.
3. Charge the weapon and load three rounds.
4. Fire a round at the target.
5. Adjust windage and elevation as required.
6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 as needed.

**REFERENCES:** TM 11235A-OR Operator's Manual for 40mm Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher, M32

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night) XM1110	6 round per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17610 Grenade Launcher Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 6 rounds provided for zero and remediation.

---

**MCSF-M32-2007:** Engage targets with a M32 Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a zeroed M32 Multi-Shot 40mm Grenade Launcher, ammunition, and targets from 90 to 375 meters.

**STANDARD:** To achieve effects on two targets with at least 4 of 6 rounds within the effective casualty radius.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assume a covered position.
2. Place estimated range on sight.
3. Load six rounds.

4. Engage one target with a single round until effect on target is attained.
5. Once on target, fire remaining rounds.
6. Reload.
7. Repeat steps 2 through 5.
8. Perform immediate/remedial action as required.
9. Make a condition 4 weapon.

**REFERENCES:** TM 11235A-OR Operator's Manual for 40mm Multi-Shot Grenade Launcher, M32

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

0311-M32-2002                      0311-M32-2004                      0311-M32-2005

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night) XM1110	18 round per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17610 Grenade Launcher Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 18 rounds, includes 3 rounds for remediation.

---

**MCSF-NLW-2001:** Conduct crowd control

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 8152, 8154

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given multiple subjects, all necessary equipment.

**STANDARD:** To protect designated asset.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Form the control force.
2. Declare use of force.
3. Execute control force techniques.

**REFERENCES:**

1. DODD 3000.3-R Policy for Non-lethal Weapons

2. FM 3-19.15 Civil Disturbance Operations
3. FM 3-22.40 Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Tactical Employment of Nonlethal Weapons
4. MCO 5500.6F Arming of Security and Law Enforcement (LE) Personnel and the Use of Force

---

**MCSF-OFF-2001:** Perform individual movement in an urban environment (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary personal equipment, while in support of an assigned mission.

**STANDARD:** To safely move while maintaining unit security.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Cross a wall.
2. Observe around a corner.
3. Move past a window.
4. Move past a door.
5. Move parallel to a building.
6. Cross a danger area.

**REFERENCES:** Urban Assault Instructor Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	0	Y

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Unit movement can be trained through simulation, however these physical activities cannot be replicated in a simulator.

---

**MCSF-OFF-2002:** Perform individual actions in a patrol (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a patrol order, assigned weapon, and an assignment in a patrol, while wearing a fighting load,

**STANDARD:** To support scheme of maneuver.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Perform individual actions in exiting friendly lines.
3. Perform individual actions at halts.
4. Perform individual movement techniques.
5. Perform actions at established control measures.
6. Perform immediate action drills as necessary.
7. Perform individual actions in re-entry of friendly lines.
8. Participate in the patrol debriefs.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-10A.4 Marine Rifle Squad

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	20 per weapon
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	10 per Team
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M115A2	1 per Team

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**MCSF-OFF-2003:** Lead a fire team as an element of a patrol (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a fire team, an objective, and an order.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver and accomplish the mission.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct Pre-Combat actions (PCC/PCI, rehearsals, confirmation briefs).
2. Assign individual duties.
3. Assign buddy team duties.
4. Control fire team formations.
5. Maintain contact with adjacent unit(s).
6. Control fire team movement.
7. Assign sectors of fire.
8. Assign organic weapons target precedence.
9. Assign engagement criteria.
10. Enforce continuing actions.
11. Report as required.
12. Conduct post-combat actions (debrief/AAR).

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-10A.4 Marine Rifle Squad

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	Y

---

**MCSF-PAT-2001:** Determine the error in a lensatic compass

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a lensatic compass, a surveyed point with a level platform, an azimuth marker, and a surveyed known direction.

**STANDARD:** To within three (3) degrees.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Place compass at survey point.
2. Remove all magnetic attractions.
3. Sight in on azimuth marker.
4. Calculate error.
5. Record error on compass.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling
  2. TC 3-25.26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
-



**MCSF-PAT-2002:** Navigate with a map and compass

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given periods of daylight or darkness, a route card, lensatic compass, and designated points, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To arrive within 100 meters of each designated checkpoint.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine pace count.
2. Determine the error in a lensatic compass.
3. Hold the lensatic compass level.
4. Rotate the bezel ring until the luminous line is over the fixed black index line.
5. Divide the desired azimuth by 3 to determine the number of clicks to rotate the bezel ring.
6. Rotate the bezel ring to the left the appropriate number of clicks.
7. Assume the center-hold position.
8. Rotate your body until the north-seeking arrow is aligned with the luminous line.
9. Proceed forward in the direction of the front cover's sighting wire.
10. Maintain alignment of the luminous line and north-seeking arrow until the desired distance has been traversed.
11. Bypass obstacle as required.
12. Perform deliberate offset as required.

**REFERENCES:** TC 3-25.26 Map Reading and Land Navigation

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17412 Land Navigation Course

---

**MCSF-PAT-2003:** Prepare for combat

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an order with a mission to conduct combat operations, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the individual is prepared to accomplish the mission.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Receive warning order.
2. Conduct preparations in accordance with warning order.
3. Receive the order.
4. Conduct rehearsals.
5. Conduct Pre-Combat Checks.
6. Stand Pre-Combat Inspections.
7. Test fire weapon (when feasible).

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This task applies to all combat operations.
2. Operational Risk Management (ORM) should be incorporated into the planning process.

---

**MCSF-PAT-2004:** Perform individual movement techniques (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an individual weapon, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To arrive at the objective.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Negotiate obstacles.
2. Perform high crawl.
3. Perform low crawl.
4. Perform individual actions during fire and movement (fight from cover to cover).
5. Perform individual actions in combat formations.
6. Perform the walking technique for night movement.
7. Perform individual actions in response to ground/aerial illumination.
8. Perform the creeping technique for night movement.

**REFERENCES:** MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 per Marine
L495 Flare, Surface Trip M49/A1 Series	1 per Marine
L598 Simulator, Explosive Booby Trap Flash M117	1 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**MCSF-PAT-2005:** Handle detainees (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary personal equipment, rules of engagement, a detainee, capture tag (DD Form 2745), readily available materials, and flex cuffs.

**STANDARD:** In accordance with the ROE and the Laws of War.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Search the detainee.
2. Tag detainee and items collected.
3. Report number of personnel detained.
4. Evacuate detainee.
5. Segregate detainee.
6. Safeguard detainee.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 4-11.8D Detainee Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	0	Y

---

**MCSF-PAT-2006:** Perform individual actions in passage of lines (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary personal equipment, an order, a route guide, and an assignment in a unit.

**STANDARD:** Without compromising the integrity of the mission.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Maintain noise and light discipline.
2. Provide security.
3. Perform individual movement.
4. Travel through gaps or lanes in obstacle plan as directed.

**REFERENCES:** MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	0	Y

---

**MCSF-PAT-2007:** Perform individual actions in a patrol (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary equipment, a patrol order, and an assignment in a patrol.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver without compromising the integrity of the patrol.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare for the patrol.
2. Perform individual actions in exiting friendly lines.
3. Perform individual actions at halts.
4. Perform individual movement techniques.
5. Perform actions at established control measures.
6. Perform immediate action drills as necessary.
7. Perform individual actions in re-entry of friendly lines.
8. Disseminate information.
9. Participate in the After Action Review (AAR).
10. Participate in the patrol debrief.

**REFERENCES:** MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	8	Y

---

**MCSF-PAT-2008:** Perform immediate actions upon contact with the enemy (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary equipment, a patrol order, and an assignment in a patrol.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the threat.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Perform individual actions during an immediate halt.
2. Perform individual actions during air observation.
3. Perform individual actions during air attack.
4. Perform individual actions during a hasty ambush.
5. Perform individual actions during an immediate assault.
6. Perform individual actions during a near-counter-ambush.
7. Perform individual actions during a far-counter-ambush.
8. Perform individual actions upon contact with a booby trap.
9. Perform individual actions while crossing a danger area.
10. Perform individual actions while breaking contact.
11. Perform individual actions during an indirect fire attack.
12. Perform individual actions upon contact with a sniper.

**REFERENCES:** MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	0	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	30 per Marine

G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	1 per Marine
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228 w/ Conf Clip	1 per Marine
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	1 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**MCSF-PAT-2009:** Recognize indicators of Improvised Explosive Devices (IED)  
(S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an operating environment with an IED threat and observation  
aiding devices.

**STANDARD:** To identify all indicators in accordance with WTI Lexicon 4.0  
Edition 2012.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Define the five common components of an IED.
2. Define the types of IEDs.
3. Identify visual indicators of a suspected emplaced IED.
4. Identify visual indicators of a suspected vehicle-borne improvised explosive device (VBIED).
5. Identify the visual indicators of a suspected suicide vehicle-borne improvised explosive device (SVBIED) vehicle and driver.
6. Identify the visual indicators of a suspected person-borne IED (PBIED).

**REFERENCES:** JIEDDTF 05-23 Joint Improvised Explosive Device Defeat  
Organization Tactics, Techniques and Procedures Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	0	Y

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Commander/Units should contact local Training Support Centers (TSC) to request Service-level endorsed CIED training via Marine Corps Tactics Operations Group (MCTOG) and Marine Corps Engineer School (MCES) at their respective home stations in order to meet METL based CIED requirements (sustainment and/or pre-deployment training).

---

**MCSF-PAT-2010:** React to an unexploded IED (L/S)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a mission, detection equipment, marking equipment, T/O weapon, combat load, and references.

**STANDARD:** To confirm presence of all threats in a lane, route, or area with no injury to friendly personnel or damage to equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Establish Security.
2. Conduct 5&25 meter checks.
3. Mark suspected threat(s).
4. Report suspected threat(s).
5. React to follow-on attack.
6. Report to higher, adjacent, supporting units, as required.

**REFERENCES:** JIEDDTF 05-23 Joint Improvised Explosive Device Defeat Organization Tactics, Techniques and Procedures Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	L/S	IIT	Squad Hours	0	Y

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Commander/Units should contact local Training Support Centers (TSC) to request Service-level endorsed CIED training via Marine Corps Tactics Operations Group (MCTOG) and Marine Corps Engineer School (MCES) at their respective home stations in order to meet METL based CIED requirements(sustainment and/or pre-deployment training).

---

**MCSF-PAT-2011:** React to an IED attack (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** As a member of unit, given a mission, rules of engagement, and a detonated improvised explosive device (IED).

**STANDARD:** To recognize any indicators and conduct immediate actions on the threat.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Report direction, distance and casualties.
2. React to Personnel Borne-Improvised Explosive Device, Suicide Vehicle Borne-Improvised Explosive Device and Vehicle Borne-Improvised Explosive Device.
3. Conduct 5 Cs (confirm, clear, cordon, check, and control), as necessary.
4. Check for secondary devices.
5. React to follow on attack(s).
6. Conduct CASEVAC, when applicable.
7. Conduct self-recovery of assets, when applicable.
8. Coordinate recovery of assets with higher, adjacent, or supporting unit(s).
9. Coordinate Combat Tracking Dog support, if available.
10. Resume mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. JIEDDTF 05-23 Joint Improvised Explosive Device Defeat Organization Tactics, Techniques and Procedures Handbook
2. MCRP 3- 7.2D SUPERCEDED Explosive Hazards Operations

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MCSF-COMM-2003

MCSF-COMM-2004

MCSF-OFF-2003

MCSF-PAT-2004

MCSF-PAT-2007

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	0	Y

**MISCELLANEOUS:**



**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Commander/Units should contact local Training Support Centers (TSC) to request Service-level endorsed CIED training via Marine Corps Tactics Operations Group (MCTOG) and Marine Corps Engineer School (MCES) at their respective home stations in order to meet METL based CIED requirements (sustainment and/or pre-deployment training).

---

**MCSF-PAT-2012:** Develop a warning order

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an order from higher headquarters.

**STANDARD:** To disseminate tasks in preparation for combat.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Receive the order.
2. Conduct METT-T.
3. Identify specified and implied tasks.
4. Identify attachments (assigned or needed).
5. Determine mission timeline and conduct backwards planning.
6. Write the situation paragraph.
7. Write the mission statement.
8. Write general instructions.
9. Write special instructions.
10. Issue the warning order.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook

---

**MCSF-PAT-2013:** Lead a fire team as an element of a patrol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a fire team and an order.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct Pre-Combat actions (PCC/PCI, rehearsals, and confirmation briefs).
2. Assign individual duties.
3. Assign buddy team duties.

4. Control fire team formations.
5. Maintain contact with adjacent unit(s).
6. Control fire team movement.
7. Assign sectors of fire.
8. Assign organic weapons target precedence.
9. Assign engagement criteria.
10. Enforce continuing actions.
11. Report as required.
12. Conduct post-combat actions (debrief/AAR).

**REFERENCES:** MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**MCSF-PAT-2014:** Write a squad patrol order

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a squad with attachments, a mission with commander's intent, paper, and pen.

**STANDARD:** To support the achievement of higher headquarters intent.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Receive the mission order from higher.
2. Analyze higher's order.
3. Determine availability of resources and assets.
4. Publish a patrol warning order.
5. Arrange for reconnaissance.
6. Conduct reconnaissance (physical, map, etc.).
7. Develop courses of action based on METT-T.
8. Choose a course of action.
9. Develop the orientation.
10. Develop the situation.
11. Develop a mission statement.
12. Develop the execution.
13. Develop tasking statements.
14. Develop coordinating instructions.
15. Develop administration and logistics.
16. Develop command and signal.
17. Finalize the plan.

**REFERENCES:** MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

---

**MCSF-PAT-2015:** Lead a squad patrol (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a squad, an order, and a mission

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Post a warning order.
2. Coordinate with adjacent units.
3. Coordinate with front line troops.
4. Conduct pre-combat actions (PCC/PCI, rehearsals, and confirmation briefs).
5. Issue a patrol order.
6. Lead departure of friendly lines.
7. Report exit of friendly lines.
8. Submit combat reports as required.
9. Lead immediate actions as required.
10. Lead actions on the objective.
11. Request re-entry of friendly lines.
12. Lead patrol on re-entry of friendly lines.
13. Conduct a patrol report.
14. Conduct post-combat actions (debrief/AAR).

**REFERENCES:** MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	IIT	Squad Hours	0	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**MCSF-TACT-2001:** Clear an objective

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a unit.

**STANDARD:** To eliminate threats and protect assets.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Move to entry point
2. Make entry.
3. Apply clearing techniques.
4. Secure the objective.
5. Conduct reporting procedures.
6. Prepare for follow on mission (as necessary)

**REFERENCES:** NTPP 3-07.11 Maritime Interception Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	90 cartridges per Marine
A065 Ctg, 5.56mm Military Pack Short Range	90 cartridges per Marine
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	60 cartridges per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	200 cartridges per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	20 cartridges per Marine
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	60 cartridges per Marine
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	60 cartridges per Marine
DWBS Charge, Diversionary MK141 Mod 0	2 charges per Marine

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** In order to conduct this event, it is assumed that the objective has been properly isolated. Minimum of two personnel are required to conduct this task. Personnel should also be able to identify plain sight items of intelligence value. This task can be trained to standard through the use of the Visual Battlefield System.

---

**MCSF-TRNG-2001:** Conduct risk assessment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a training or operational environment.

**STANDARD:** To develop controls which mitigate risks.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct an operational analysis by listing the major steps of the event.
2. Conduct a preliminary hazard analysis by listing the hazards associated with each step.
3. List the possible causes of the hazards.
4. Determine the degree of risk for each hazard in terms of severity and probability.
5. Develop controls for each hazard to eliminate the hazard or reduce the risk until the benefit is greater than the risk.
6. Determine residual risk.
7. Make a risk decision.
8. Incorporate the selected controls into SOPs, Letters of Instruction (LOIs), orders, briefs, training, and rehearsals.
9. Communicate selected controls to the lowest level.
10. Enforce standards and controls.
11. Remain alert for changes and unexpected developments that require time critical or deliberate ORM.
12. Take corrective action, when necessary.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 5-12.1C Risk Management - Cancelled w/o replacement

---

**MCSF-TRNG-2002:** Conduct small unit training

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, required external support, equipment, and a mission.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the individual and collective training tasks are performed to standard.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Review the training standard to determine required resources and the most appropriate method(s) for delivering instruction.
2. Determine required resources.
3. Request the required resources.
4. Prepare a training outline.
5. Prepare the training area.
6. Conduct ORA.
7. Assemble the target audience.
8. Explain the training standard.
9. Conduct a safety brief.

10. Conduct the instruction/event.
11. Evaluate the performance.
12. Remediate Marines that do not master the training standard.
13. Conduct debrief.
14. Identify follow on training requirements.
15. Update individual training records.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 25-10 Leaders Guide to Lane Training
2. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

---

**MCSF-TRNG-2003:** Issue an order

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given higher commander's intent, mission, a developed order, and a terrain model.

**STANDARD:** To ensure completion of an operation in accordance with commander's intent.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assemble the unit around the terrain model.
2. Take role to ensure all members are present.
3. If issuing a mission order, receive a status report for the unit on the preparatory tasks assigned to them when the warning order was issued.
4. Precede the issuance of the order with the orientation.
5. Issue the entire order before taking questions.
6. Conduct a question and answer session.
7. Conclude the issue process with a time check and announcing the next event to be accomplished.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
2. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Graphics

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Use terrain models, maps, sand tables or any other material to support issue of the order.

---

**MCSF-VEH-2001:** Establish a load plan for a tactical vehicle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given tactical vehicles, associated assets, and a mission.

**STANDARD:** To load necessary assets within a tactical vehicle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Receive the warning order.
2. Identify required Class II, III, V, and IX end items needed for the mission.
3. Identify equipment common to all vehicles within the patrol.
4. Plan the storage of gear common to all vehicles.
5. Plan the storage of additional required equipment for the individual vehicle.
6. Execute the load plan and store the required equipment.
7. Rehearse the bump-plan.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 17-98 Scout Platoon
  2. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
- 

**MCSF-VEH-2002:** Conduct mounted land navigation

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tactical vehicle with driver, designated point(s), map, and a navigation device.

**STANDARD:** To maneuver to 8 of 10 designated point(s).

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Operate a tactical vehicle.
2. Navigate to a designated point.

**REFERENCES:** TC 3-25.26 Map Reading and Land Navigation

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**MCSF-VEH-2003:** Perform individual actions from a vehicle (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary equipment, a vehicle, and an assignment in a unit.

**STANDARD:** To provide security for an assigned sector of fire.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Mount a vehicle.
2. Cover sectors of fire.
3. Perform individual actions during a security halt.
4. Perform individual actions in reaction to improvised explosive devices.
5. Perform individual actions during enemy contact.
6. Dismount a vehicle.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCIP 3-17.01 CANCELLED! Combined Arms Improvised Explosive Device Defeat Operations
2. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single Round	30 per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**MCSF-VEH-2004:** Prepare an immobilized vehicle for towing operations from the front

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT



**CONDITION:** Given tactical vehicles, associated assets, SL-3 materials, and an immobilized vehicle.

**STANDARD:** To facilitate recovery operations.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Attach and secure the tow bar to the towing shackle bracket of the vehicle to be towed.
2. Align, attach, and secure tow bar to the pintle hook of the towing vehicle.
3. Attach safety chain to vehicle frame.
4. Place transmission and transfer case shift lever in "N."
5. Release the parking brake lever.

**REFERENCES:** TM 2320-10/6B Truck, Utility 1 1/2 Ton (HMMWV)

---

**MCSF-VEH-2006:** Communicate using hand and arm signals

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary equipment, a tactical vehicle without radio communication assets, a weapon system, SL-3 materials, and an assignment in a vehicle movement.

**STANDARD:** To direct all other vehicles during movement.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Execute the hand and arm signal for line.
2. Execute the hand and arm signal for vee.
3. Execute the hand and arm signal for wedge.
4. Execute the hand and arm signal for echelon left/right.
5. Execute the hand and arm signal for coil.
6. Execute the hand and arm signal for move forward.
7. Execute the hand and arm signal for column/file.
8. Execute the hand and arm signal for tactical column.
9. Execute the hand and arm signal for herringbone.
10. Execute the hand and arm signal for dispersion.
11. Execute the hand and arm signal for change of direction.
12. Execute the hand and arm signal for mount/dismount.
13. Execute the hand and arm signal for successive bounding.
14. Execute the hand and arm signal for alternate bounding.
15. Execute the hand and arm signal for cease and shift.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
  2. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
  3. TM 2320-10/6B Truck, Utility 1 1/2 Ton (HMMWV)
-

**MCSF-VEH-2007:** Communicate using organic tactical vehicle radio communications equipment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary equipment, a tactical vehicle with mounted communication assets, a weapon system, SL-3 materials, and an assignment in a vehicle movement.

**STANDARD:** To communicate with adjacent units.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assemble and communicate using VHF.
2. Assemble and communicate using UHF.
3. Assemble and communicate using HF.
4. Communicate with a distant station.
5. Troubleshoot equipment as required.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 6-22C RADIO OPERATOR'S HANDBOOK

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Due to the changes/updates in communication equipment, this task is designed to use the latest available communications references.

---

**MCSF-VEH-2008:** Maneuver a tactical vehicle during off-road operations (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given tactical vehicles, fording kit, snow chains, and SL-3 materials.

**STANDARD:** To support scheme of maneuver.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Analyze the route.
2. Analyze adjacent terrain.
3. Perform operations over rough and unusual terrain.
4. Mount snow chains.
5. Perform operations during extreme cold weather.

6. Perform operations in dusty and/or sandy areas.
7. Perform operations in rainy and/or muddy terrain.
8. Perform a shallow water fording movement.
9. Perform a deep water fording movement.

**REFERENCES:** TM 2320-10/6B Truck, Utility 1 1/2 Ton (HMMWV)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ODS	Team Hours	2	Y

---

**MCSF-VEH-2009:** Perform tactical vehicle maneuvers (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary equipment, a tactical vehicle with mounted communication assets, a weapon system, SL-3 materials, and an assignment in a vehicle movement.

**STANDARD:** To maneuver a tactical vehicle using appropriate traveling techniques and vehicle formations.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Receive the order.
2. Identify where the individual vehicle will be positioned during tactical vehicle formations and traveling techniques.
3. Rehearse traveling techniques and vehicle formations to be used during the operation.
4. Establish a communication plan with the vehicle gunner that allows for fluid directional corrections during movement.
5. Maneuver the tactical vehicle into a formation.
6. Maneuver as part of a tactical vehicle squad using alternative bounding.
7. Maneuver as part of a tactical vehicle squad using successive bounding.
8. Maneuver as part of a tactical vehicle squad using traveling overwatch.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 17-98 Scout Platoon
2. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	2	Y

---

**MCSF-VEH-2010:** Employ security measures during vehicle security halts

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary equipment, a tactical vehicle with mounted communication assets, a weapon system, SL-3 materials, and assignment in a vehicle movement.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate threat.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Analyze OKOCAW and METT-T.
2. Determine criteria for short and long security halts.
3. Perform a 5-meter visual check in the area surrounding halted vehicle.
4. Perform a 25-meter visual check with organic optics in the area surrounding the halted vehicle.
5. Dismount the tactical vehicle and conduct a physical check of the area within 25-meters surrounding the halted vehicle.
6. Coordinate with vehicle gunner to provide overwatch while conducting foot movements.
7. Establish short-term observation/listening post during long vehicle security halts.
8. Establish communications between vehicle commander and OP position.
9. Determine applicable CCIRs and PIRs.
10. Plan for consolidation and movement of OP position.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 17-98 Scout Platoon
  2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
  3. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
  4. TM 2320-10/6B Truck, Utility 1 1/2 Ton (HMMWV)
- 

**MCSF-VEH-2011:** Lead a team/squad in motorized operations (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary equipment, a team/squad, motorized assets, rules of engagement, and a mission.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Receive the order.
2. Conduct METT-T analysis.
3. Conduct route planning/reconnaissance.
4. Determine duties and responsibilities.
5. Develop communications plan.
6. Develop bump plan.
7. Determine reporting procedures.
8. Conduct fire support planning.
9. Issue convoy order.
10. Prepare vehicles for assigned mission.
11. Conduct pre-combat checks and inspections (PCC/PCI).
12. Conduct rehearsals.
13. Conduct confirmation briefs.
14. Execute the mission.
15. Conduct debrief.
16. Conduct after action review (AAR).

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 17-98 Scout Platoon
2. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
3. TM 2320-10/6B Truck, Utility 1 1/2 Ton (HMMWV)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	CCS	Crew Hours	2	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Motorized operations are not limited to combat. Administrative movements, movements in CONUS, and any other significant motorized travel/events are applicable.

This event can be accomplished to standard using a tactical vehicle convoy simulator.

**MCSF-VEH-2012:** Conduct Technical Driving (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** MCSF units in support of operations and utilize tactical or non-tactical Vehicles. Non-Tactical Vehicles are defined as "any vehicle other than a conventional military vehicle; the lack of a Crew-Served Weapon turret and robust armor are key features". Tactical or non-tactical tactics include the employment of technical driving techniques to evade threats in an urban environment with a high concentration of motorized traffic.

**BILLETS:** Driver

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a vehicle, PPE, prescribed route, mission, and commander's intent as part of a larger mounted element.

**STANDARD:** To safely maneuver a vehicle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Adjust seats, steering wheel, and mirrors.
2. Apply technical steering techniques (Hand-over-hand, palming, underhand, preset, and combination).
3. Apply threshold acceleration.
4. Apply threshold braking.
5. Recover from a front skid.
6. Recover from a rear skid.
7. Apply technical cornering techniques (street line and technical line).
8. Negotiate obstacles and pedestrians.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 2. Center for Army Lessons Learned (CALL) Handbook No 04-24 USSOCOM Combat Convoy
2. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ODS	Team Hours	1	Y

---

**MCSF-VEH-2013:** Conduct non-standard recovery methods for a tactical vehicle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given tactical vehicles, a tow chain, a tow rope, tow straps, SL-3 materials, and an immobilized vehicle.

**STANDARD:** To recover a vehicle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Recover a tactical vehicle using a tow chain.
2. Recover a tactical vehicle using a tow rope.
3. Recover a tactical vehicle using tow straps.
4. Recover a tactical vehicle using SL-3 materials.
5. Recover a tactical vehicle using a combination of organic self-recovery materials.

**REFERENCES:** TM 2320-10/6B Truck, Utility 1 1/2 Ton (HMMWV)

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 10

1000 LEVEL INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE . . . . .	10000	10-2
EVENT CODING. . . . .	10001	10-2
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS. . . . .	10002	10-2
1000 LEVEL EVENTS . . . . .	10003	10-4



MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 10

1000 LEVEL INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

**10000. PURPOSE.** This chapter details the individual events that pertain to MCSF personnel. Each individual event provides an event title, along with the conditions events will be performed under, and the standard to which the event must be performed to be successful.

**10001. EVENT CODING.** Events in this T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12-character, 3-field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology.

a. Field one. This field represents the community. This chapter contains the following community codes:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
8152	Marine Corps Security Force (MCSF) Guard
8154	Marine Corps Security Force Close Quarters Battle Team Member
MCSF	Marine Corps Security Force
FAST	Fleet Anti-Terrorism Security Team

b. Field two. This field represents the functional/duty area. This chapter contains the following functional/duty areas:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
ATFP	Antiterrorism Force Protection
CMBH	Combat Hunter
EMPL	Employment
IT	Interior Tactics
M2	M2 .50 Caliber Heavy Machinegun
M27	Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR)
MG	Machinegun
MMG	Medium Machinegun
OPTS	Optics
RFL	Rifle
Shot	Shotgun
M203	M203 Grenade Launcher
WPNS	Weapons

c. Field three. This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events. This chapter contains the following event levels:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
1000	Core Skills

**10002. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS**

Event Code	E-Coded	Event
8152-ATFP-1001	NO	Conduct observation (L/S)
8152-ATFP-1002	NO	Conduct aided observation
8152-ATFP-1003	NO	Identify anomalies (S/L)
8152-IT-1001	NO	Perform individual movement in an urban environment
8152-IT-1002	NO	Enter an Enclosure
8152-IT-1003	NO	Perform individual actions while clearing a room
8152-IT-1004	NO	Clear an L-Shape enclosure
8152-IT-1005	NO	Clear a Stairwell
8152-IT-1006	NO	Clear a Hallway
8152-IT-1007	NO	Control an occupant
MCSF-EMPL-1001	NO	Prepare a machinegun range card
MCSF-EMPL-1002	NO	React to machinegun fire commands
MCSF-M2-1001	NO	Perform operator maintenance for an M2A1 heavy machinegun and associated components
MCSF-M2-1002	NO	Mount an M2A1 heavy machinegun on an M3 tripod
MCSF-M2-1003	NO	Mount an M2A1 heavy machinegun on a tactical vehicle
MCSF-M2-1004	NO	Operate an M2A1 heavy machinegun
MCSF-M2-1005	NO	Perform immediate action for an M2A1 heavy machinegun
MCSF-M2-1006	NO	Perform remedial action for an M2A1 heavy machinegun
MCSF-M2-1007	NO	Zero an M2 heavy machinegun
MCSF-M2-1008	NO	Field zero an M2 heavy machinegun
MCSF-M2-1009	NO	Conduct the 10-meter Basic Course for the M2 (Gunnery Table I)
MCSF-M2-1010	NO	Conduct the Range Card Course for an M2 (Gunnery Table III)
MCSF-M2-1011	NO	Conduct the Night Vision Device (NVD) Course for the M2 (Gunnery Table IV)
MCSF-M203-1001	NO	Maintain an M203 grenade launcher.
MCSF-M203-1002	NO	Perform weapons handling procedures for the M203 grenade launcher.
MCSF-M203-1003	NO	Perform misfire procedures for an M203 grenade launcher
MCSF-M203-1004	NO	Zero a M203 grenade launcher.
MCSF-M203-1005	NO	Engage targets with a grenade launcher
MCSF-M27-1001	NO	Maintain an Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR).
MCSF-M27-1002	NO	Perform corrective action with an Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR).
MCSF-M27-1003	NO	Zero a Squad Day Optic (SDO) to an Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR).
MCSF-M27-1004	NO	BZO the Back Up Iron Sight (BUIS) to an Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR).
MCSF-M27-1005	NO	Execute the Infantry Automatic Rifle Known Distance Course of Fire. (S/L)
MCSF-M27-1006	NO	Execute the Infantry Automatic Rifle Unknown Distance Day Course of Fire. (S/L)
MCSF-MMG-1001	NO	Perform operator maintenance for an M240B medium machine gun and associated components
MCSF-MMG-1002	NO	Operate an M240B medium machinegun

MCSF-MMG-1003	NO	Perform immediate action on an M240B medium machinegun
MCSF-MMG-1004	NO	Perform remedial action on an M240B medium machinegun
MCSF-MMG-1005	NO	Zero a Machinegun Day Optic (MDO) to an M240B medium machinegun
MCSF-MMG-1006	NO	Zero a medium machinegun
MCSF-MMG-1007	NO	Field zero a medium machinegun
MCSF-MMG-1008	NO	Zero a Night Aiming Device (NAD) for a medium machinegun
MCSF-MMG-1009	NO	Zero the AN/PVS-17C for a medium machinegun
MCSF-MMG-1010	NO	Conduct the 12.7-meter Basic Course for the medium machinegun (Gunnery Table I)
MCSF-MMG-1011	NO	Conduct the Multiple Engagement Course for the medium machinegun (Gunnery Table II)
MCSF-MMG-1012	NO	Conduct the Range Card Course for the medium machinegun (Gunnery Table III)
MCSF-MMG-1013	NO	Conduct the Night Vision Device (NVD) Course for the medium machinegun (Gunnery Table IV)
MCSF-MMG-1014	NO	Conduct the 12.7-meter Bipod Course for the medium machinegun (Gunnery Table (V)
MCSF-MMG-1015	NO	Conduct the Bipod Multiple Engagement Course for the medium machinegun (Gunnery Table VI)
MCSF-OPTS-1001	NO	Utilize limited visibility devices
MCSF-OPTS-1002	NO	Zero the AN/PAS-13D(V)2 or 3 for a machinegun
MCSF-RFL-1001	NO	Perform weapons handling procedures
MCSF-RFL-1002	NO	Perform weapon maintenance
MCSF-RFL-1003	NO	Zero the weapon
MCSF-RFL-1004	NO	Demonstrate basic rifle marksmanship skills
MCSF-RFL-1005	NO	Demonstrate basic combat rifle marksmanship
MCSF-RFL-1006	NO	Zero the night aiming device
MCSF-RFL-1007	NO	Engage mid to long range threats (day)
MCSF-RFL-1008	NO	Engage mid-range threats (night)
MCSF-RFL-1009	NO	Engage short range threats (Day)
MCSF-RFL-1010	NO	Engage short range threats (Night)
MCSF-RFL-1011	NO	Engage moving threats
MCSF-SHOT-1001	NO	Perform weapons handling procedures with the service shotgun
MCSF-SHOT-1002	NO	Perform preventive maintenance on the service shotgun
MCSF-SHOT-1003	NO	Engage threats with the service shotgun (S/L)
MCSF-WPNS-1001	NO	Engage a target with an M67 fragmentation grenade
MCSF-WPNS-1002	NO	Apply advanced marksmanship skills with the service pistol
MCSF-WPNS-1003	NO	Apply advanced marksmanship skills with the service rifle.
MCSF-WPNS-1004	NO	Engage targets while transitioning from a rifle to pistol

**10003. 1000 LEVEL EVENTS**

**8152-ATFP-1001:** Conduct observation (L/S)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an area to observe, with or without the aid of observation devices, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To detect anomalies.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct a hasty search.
2. Conduct a detailed search.
3. Build Sector Sketch.
4. Establish a baseline.
5. Maintain observation.
6. Record information.
7. Detect anomalies.
8. Report as required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ISBN-13: 978-1511949835 Operational Culture for the Warfighter: Principles and Applications
2. MCIP 3-02.11 Combat Hunter
3. MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling
4. MCWP 3-15.3 Sniping

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	L/S	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** 1. Binoculars

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event can be trained using any day/night/thermal observation device, or a combination of devices.
2. Conducting a memory exercise (Keep In Memory (KIM)) reinforces observation and memory skills. The individual should observe items and identify the size, shape, color, and condition of each item displayed after items have been removed from view.

**8152-ATFP-1002:** Conduct aided observation

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an area to observe, a mission, and an observation device(s), while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To identify threats.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Establish security.
2. Employ observation device(s).
3. Conduct a hasty search of the area of observation.
4. Prioritize likely areas of threat.
5. Establish a baseline.
6. Conduct a detailed search of the area of observation.
7. Detect anomalies.
8. Report information to higher headquarters.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling
2. MCWP 3-15.3 Sniping

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:**

1. AN/PAS-22
2. AN/PVQ-31A/31B (RCO)
3. AN/PAS-13
4. AN/PVS-7/14
5. AN/PVS-17B/C
6. Binoculars

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. This task can be trained using any day/night observation device, or a combination of devices.

---

**8152-ATFP-1003:** Identify anomalies (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an area to observe, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To determine if the anomalies are threats.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct observation.
2. Establish a baseline.
3. Detect anomaly.
4. Identify the six (6) behavioral domains.
5. Report observation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. ISBN-13: 978-1511949835 Operational Culture for the Warfighter: Principles and Applications
2. MCTP 3-01A Scouting and Patrolling

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

0300-CMBH-1001                      0300-OPTS-1001

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	Y

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

**8152-IT-1001:** Perform individual movement in an urban environment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an assigned weapon and a mission, while wearing a fighting load

**STANDARD:** In accordance with MCWP 3-35.3.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Cross wall.
2. Observe around a corner.
3. Move past a window.
4. Move past a door.
5. Move parallel to a building.
6. Cross a danger area.

**REFERENCES:** MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urban Terrain (MOUT) 1998

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**8152-IT-1002:** Enter an Enclosure

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a MCSF task organized unit, given a mission, all necessary equipment, and an objective

**STANDARD:** Gaining entry in accordance with FM 3-05.221 and unit SOPs.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Provide security on entry point.
2. Cover all danger areas.
3. Stack at the entry point.
4. Check accessibility of entry point.
5. Acknowledge readiness.
6. Obtain command or signal to enter objective.
7. Clear entry point.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.221 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat
2. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urban Terrain (MOUT) 1998

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	75 rounds per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	75 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**EQUIPMENT:** Weapon (primary and secondary), appropriate targets (stationary, moving, or role players), flex cuffs, chem-lights and simunition weapons equipment as required.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** Range Safety Officer

---

**8152-IT-1003:** Perform individual actions while clearing a room

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a weapon and functioning as a member of a team, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To clear the room of threats.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make entry.
2. Eliminate all threats.
3. Clear all danger areas.
4. Apply initiative based tactics.
5. Apply clearing techniques.
6. Search the dead.
7. Search the room.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.221 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat
2. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urban Terrain (MOUT) 1998

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	75 rounds per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	75 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Rooms should be of various constructions to include but not limited to L-shapes, U-shapes, corner fed, center fed and a combination of these.

---



**8152-IT-1004:** Clear an L-Shape enclosure

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a MCSF task organized unit, given a mission, all necessary equipment, and an enclosure,

**STANDARD:** To gain control of an enclosure.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make entry.
2. Eliminate threats.
3. Identify an L-shape.
4. Clear the L-Shape.
5. Search the dead.
6. Search the room.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.221 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat
2. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urban Terrain (MOUT) 1998

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	75 rounds per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	75 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Rooms should be of various constructions to include but not limited to L-shapes, U-shapes, corner fed, center fed and a combination of these.

---

**8152-IT-1005:** Clear a Stairwell

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a task organized MCSF unit, given a mission, all necessary equipment, and an isolated and contained multilevel objective.

**STANDARD:** Eliminate threats, provide security, and facilitate follow on actions.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine suitable weapon.
2. Cover danger areas.
3. Ascend/descend the stairwell.
4. Dominate the stairwell.
5. Mark stairwell.
6. Maintain security on stairwell.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.221 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat
2. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urban Terrain (MOUT) 1998

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	75 rounds per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	75 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Stairwells (interior, exterior, enclosed, open).

---

**8152-IT-1006:** Clear a Hallway

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a task organized MCSF unit, given a mission, all necessary equipment, and an isolated and contained objective.

**STANDARD:** Eliminate threats, provide security, and facilitate follow on actions.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine direction of assault.
2. Establish hallway security.
3. Dominate hallway.
4. Eliminate adversaries as required.
5. Identify enclosures and danger areas as required.
6. Negotiate enclosures and danger areas as required.
7. Mark hallway as required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.221 Special Forces Advanced Urban Combat
2. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urban Terrain (MOUT) 1998

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	75 rounds per Marine
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	75 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**8152-IT-1007:** Control an occupant

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** As a member of a task organized MCSF unit, given a mission, all necessary equipment, occupants, and an objective,

**STANDARD:** To prevent disruption of clearing operations and safeguard personnel for further assessment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify an occupant.
2. Determine temper and intent.
3. Control occupant verbally.
4. Control occupant physically.
5. Announce clear.
6. Position cover-man.
7. Conduct hazard search procedures.
8. Restrain occupant.
9. Move occupant to appropriate location.

**REFERENCES:** MCRP 4-11.8D Detainee Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

---

**MCSF-EMPL-1001:** Prepare a machinegun range card

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a mounted SL-3 complete machinegun, a designated sector of fire, a Final Protective Line (FPL) or Principal Direction of Fire (PDF), navigation equipment, and writing materials, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To complete two copies depicting all required information.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Depict sector of fire.
2. Depict mission (FPL or PDF).
3. Depict prominent terrain feature.
4. Depict Target Reference Points (TRP) for the range card.
5. Depict target data.
6. Depict dead space.
7. Depict orientation diagram.
8. Depict weapon symbol.
9. Depict marginal data.
10. Submit copy of prepared range card to higher headquarters.

**REFERENCES:** MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	0.25	N

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**MCSF-EMPL-1002:** React to machinegun fire commands

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a mounted SL-3 complete machinegun, a crew, and a fire mission, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To engage designated targets in accordance with the unit leader's fire command.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Respond to initial fire commands.
2. Engage a target with a machinegun in accordance with fire command.
3. Respond to subsequent commands.

**REFERENCES:** MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	0	N

NOTES: Hours roll up under other Machine Gunner ISMT events.

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	4000 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	200 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	32 rounds per Marine
BA21 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night) MK281 Mod 1 Linked	32 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range  
Facility Code 17582 Automated Multipurpose Machine Gun Range (MPMG)

---

**MCSF-M2-1001:** Perform operator maintenance for an M2A1 heavy machinegun and associated components

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an SL-3 complete M2 heavy machinegun, M3 tripod, cradle/mount, vehicle mount components, authorized cleaning gear, and lubricants.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the weapon and components are operational.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure the weapon is in condition 4.
2. Disassemble the M2 heavy machinegun.
3. Clean the M2 heavy machinegun.
4. Inspect the M2 heavy machinegun.
5. Lubricate the M2 heavy machinegun.
6. Assemble the M2 heavy machinegun.
7. Perform function check.
8. Clean an M3 tripod.
9. Inspect an M3 tripod.
10. Lubricate an M3 tripod.
11. Inspect the M2 SL-3 components.
12. Clean the M2 SL-3 components.
13. Lubricate the M2 SL-3 components.
14. Clean the cradle/mount.
15. Inspect the cradle/mount.
16. Lubricate the cradle/mount.
17. Clean the vehicle components.
18. Inspect the vehicle components.
19. Lubricate the vehicle components.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
  2. TM 02498D-OR Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, M2A1 Caliber .50; Browning
  3. TM 1005-OR Technical Manual, Machinegun Mounts
  4. TM 12017A-OI Heavy Machinegun Sight System
- 

**MCSF-M2-1002:** Mount an M2A1 heavy machinegun on an M3 tripod

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an SL-3 complete M2A1 heavy machinegun, an M3 tripod, and a cradle/mount, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To place the gun into action.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect the M2A1 heavy machinegun and associated components for serviceability.
2. Emplace the M3 tripod in the desired location.
3. Attach the cradle/mount to the M3 tripod.
4. Attach ammunition brackets to the cradle/mount.
5. Attach the M2A1 receiver to the cradle/mount.
6. Attach the barrel to the M2A1 heavy machinegun receiver.
7. Make a condition 4 weapon.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. TM 02498D-OR Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, M2A1 Caliber .50; Browning

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	0.25	N

---

**MCSF-M2-1003:** Mount an M2A1 heavy machinegun on a tactical vehicle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an SL-3 complete M2A1 heavy machinegun, a tactical vehicle, cradle/mount, and a mounting adapter, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To place the gun into action.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect the M2A1 heavy machinegun and associated components for serviceability.
2. Attach mounting adapter to the tactical vehicle.
3. Attach cradle/mount to the mounting adapter.
4. Attach T&E mechanism ensure gun is leveled.
5. Attach ammunition brackets to the cradle/mount.
6. Attach the M2A1 heavy machinegun receiver to the cradle/mount.
7. Attach the barrel to the M2A1 heavy machinegun receiver.
8. Make a condition 4 weapon.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. TM 02498D-OR Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, M2A1 Caliber .50; Browning
3. TM 1005-OR Technical Manual, Machinegun Mounts

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**EQUIPMENT:** 1. Tactical vehicle.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. The following components can be used to mount the M2 Heavy Machinegun: MK64 cradle, MK 93 cradle, MK 93 cradle MOD 1, MK 175 vehicle mount, universal pintle adapter (UPA).

---

**MCSF-M2-1004:** Operate an M2A1 heavy machinegun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a mounted, SL-3 complete M2A1 heavy machinegun, and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To place the weapon into Condition 1.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure the weapon is in condition 4.
2. Load the weapon with the cover raised.
3. Unload the weapon.
4. Load the weapon with the cover closed.
5. Change barrels.
6. Unload the weapon.
7. Make a condition 4 weapon.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. TM 02498D-OR Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, M2A1 Caliber .50; Browning

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	0.25	N

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	10 rounds per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

---

**MCSF-M2-1005:** Perform immediate action for an M2A1 heavy machinegun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL



**CONDITION:** Given a mounted SL-3 complete M2A1 heavy machinegun loaded with ammunition, and a malfunction or stoppage, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To return the weapon into action.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Announce "MISFIRE."
2. Wait five seconds for a possible hang fire.
3. Recharge weapon, watching for feeding and ejecting, if weapon feeds/ejects, attempt to fire.
4. If the weapon does not feed or eject, determine if the barrel is hot or cold. (If hot, place the weapon on safe and single shot mode and wait 15 minutes) Then perform remedial action.
5. If the weapon fails to fire announce "MISFIRE".
6. Wait five seconds for possible hang fire. Determine hot or cold barrel. (If hot, place the weapon on safe and single shot mode and wait 15 minutes) then perform remedial action.

**REFERENCES:** TM 02498D-OR Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, M2A1 Caliber .50; Browning

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	10 rounds per weapon

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. After waiting 5 seconds for a hang fire, there is an additional 5 seconds that a gunner has to pull the bolt to the rear. If the bolt cannot be pulled to the rear in that time period and the barrel is hot enough to produce a cook off, the gunner must place the weapon in the single shot mode and wait 15 minutes before starting remedial action.

---

**MCSF-M2-1006:** Perform remedial action for an M2A1 heavy machinegun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an SL-3 complete M2A1 heavy machinegun loaded with ammunition, with a malfunction or stoppage not corrected by immediate action, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To determine the cause of the stoppage or malfunction.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Announce "MISFIRE".

2. Wait 10 seconds for a possible hang fire.
3. Pull the bolt to the rear and watch for feeds/ejects.
4. Attempt to fire.
5. If weapon fails to fire again, repeat steps 1 through 4. (If the weapon continues to fail, move to step 6)
6. If the weapon does not feed or eject, determine if the barrel is hot or cold (if hot, place the weapon on safe and single shot mode, and then wait 15 minutes).
7. If the barrel is cold, or if 15 minutes has passed after determining the barrel was hot, perform remedial action.

**REFERENCES:** TM 02498D-OR Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, M2A1 Caliber .50; Browning

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	10 rounds per weapon

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

---

**MCSF-M2-1007:** Zero an M2 heavy machinegun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an M2 heavy machinegun, ammunition, and basic machinegun targets at 10 meters, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To establish point of aim/point of impact.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Put the gun in Condition 1.
2. Lay the gun on the first paster, ensuring that the sights are aligned and at 6 o'clock on the paster.
3. Fire 3 rounds, one at a time, ensuring that the same 6 o'clock sight picture is regained on the paster between shots.
4. Put the gun in Condition 4.
5. Move downrange to observe the shot group and mark the center of the group.
6. If the center of the shot group is in the center of the paster, the gun is zeroed.
7. If the center of the shot group is not in the center of the paster, the rear peep sight aperture needs adjustment.
8. Make the necessary sight adjustments.

9. Put the gun in condition 1.
10. Fire another 3-round shot group (one round at a time) at the same paster.
11. Put the gun in Condition 4.
12. Move back downrange to observe the shot group. Make appropriate sight adjustments.
13. Continue the above procedures until the shot group is centered in the paster.
14. Confirm zero by firing a 3-round shot group at the second paster.
15. Once the zero is confirmed, zero out the deflection scale.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	12 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17510 Basic 10M-25M Firing Range (Zero)  
Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.

---

**MCSF-M2-1008:** Field zero an M2 heavy machinegun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an M2 heavy machinegun, ammunition, and targets at 550 meters, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To establish point of aim/point of impact.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Estimate the range to target.
2. Set the rear sight elevation to the estimated range and lay the gun on the target (sights at 6 o'clock to the target).
3. Fire a single round while the assistant gunner observes the impact.

4. Manipulate the T&E mechanism until the impact is adjusted onto the target.
5. Once the impact is on target, fire a confirmation round.
6. Maintain position and shoulder pressure ensuring that the lay of the gun remains the same while sight adjustments are made for windage and elevation.
7. Once the sights are aligned on the target, fire a single confirmation round to verify the field zero.
8. When the zero is confirmed, adjust the windage scale so that the index line is zeroed on the windage scale.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	5 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Since the zeroing calibrates the rear sight for all targets within the effective range of the machinegun, the estimated range to any target can be placed on the rear sight and, with proper range estimation and a 6 o'clock sight picture, the initial burst should be on target.
2. DODIC A571 may be substituted if available for this event. If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.

---

**MCSF-M2-1009:** Conduct the 10-meter Basic Course for the M2 (Gunnery Table I)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an M2 heavy machinegun, ammunition, and basic machinegun targets at 10 meters, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** By achieving a minimum score of 70 points out of a possible 102.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare two (2) 6-round belts of ammunition.
2. Engage pasters in Bank 3-4 (one paster each) with one 6-round burst each.
3. Prepare a 30-round belt of ammunition.
4. Engage pasters in Bank 5-6 (5 pasters total) with one 6-round burst each, using the traverse and search mechanism for each subsequent burst.
5. Prepare a 48-round belt of ammunition.
6. Engage pasters in Bank 7-8 (8 pasters total) with one 6-round burst each, using the traverse and search mechanism as appropriate for each subsequent burst.
7. Prepare four (4) 6-round belts of ammunition.
8. In a time limit of 45 seconds, engage pasters in Bank 1-4 (4 pasters total) with one 6-round burst each. No manipulation of the T&E is required other than to obtain proper sight alignment and picture before firing the 6-round bursts.
9. Prepare a 30-round belt of ammunition.
10. In a time limit of 30 seconds, engage pasters in Bank 5-6 (5 pasters total) with one 6-round burst each, using the traverse and search mechanism for each subsequent burst.
11. Prepare a 48-round belt of ammunition.
12. In a time limit of 45 seconds, engage pasters in Bank 7-8 (8 targets total) with one 6-round burst each, using the traverse and search mechanism as appropriate for each subsequent burst.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	192 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17510 Basic 10M-25M Firing Range (Zero)  
Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Total possible score for Table I is 102 points, with a minimum of 70 points for a passing score.
2. Only rounds that impact on or within the line of the paster will be scored.
3. Each hit is scored as one point.
4. Only 6 rounds per paster will be scored, for a total score of 6 points per paster.

5. Table I score does not constitute complete qualification for the medium machinegun gunner. Table II (Transition Course) must also be fired, and the two scores added together in order to achieve a qualification score. If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.

---

**MCSF-M2-1010:** Conduct the Range Card Course for an M2 (Gunnery Table III)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an M2 heavy machinegun, ammunition, 4-silhouette target banks and stationary vehicle silhouette targets from 600 to 1000 meters, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To record and fire targets in a defensive situation.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. With a 48-round belt of ammunition, register the Final Protective Line (FPL) using 12-round bursts.
2. Record the T&E data for the FPL on the range card.
3. With a 48-round belt of ammunition, register the two 4-silhouette target banks (one at 600 and one at 700 meters), and the two stationary vehicle silhouette targets (one at 900 and one at 1000 meters).
4. Record the T&E data for the point targets on the range card.
5. With a 24-round belt of ammunition, register the two linear targets; one shallow target at 600 meters, and one deep target centered at 800 meters.
6. Record the T&E data for the linear targets on the range card.
7. With a 12-round belt of ammunition, engage the two linear targets using T&E data from the range card.
8. With a 24-round belt of ammunition, engage the four point targets using T&E data from the range card.
9. With a 12-round belt of ammunition, fire the final protective line using T&E data from the range card in a single burst.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	168 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Performance steps 1-6 are for the registration of targets and the preparation of the range card.
  2. Performance steps 7-9 are engagement and are scored as follows: 1 point for each target hit, with a total possible of 7 points.
  3. When firing the FPL, the burst must achieve grazing fire, as evidenced by the beaten zone striking a reference point determined during registration.
  4. A passing score on this gunnery table is 5 out of 7.
- If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.
- 

**MCSF-M2-1011:** Conduct the Night Vision Device (NVD) Course for the M2 (Gunnery Table IV)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an M2 heavy machinegun, ammunition, a night vision device, and 4-silhouette target banks and stationary vehicle silhouette targets from 600 to 1000 meters, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To engage targets in a non-illuminated environment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare a belt of 144 rounds.
2. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a 4-silhouette target bank at 800 meters.
3. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a 4-silhouette target bank at 600 meters.
4. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a 4-silhouette target bank at 700 meters.
5. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a stationary vehicle silhouette target at 1000 meters.
6. In a time limit of 35 seconds, engage multiple 4-silhouette target banks at 600 and 700 meters.
7. In a time limit of 35 seconds, engage multiple 4-silhouette target banks at 800 and 900 meters.
8. In a time limit of 45 seconds, engage multiple 4-silhouette target banks at 600, 700, and 1000 meters.
9. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a stationary vehicle silhouette target at 900 meters.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	144 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. The ammunition load allows for an allotment of two 6-round bursts for each of the 12 targets. Any leftover bursts (resulting from a first-burst hit) may be applied to a target that was not hit with the first or second burst, but no more than three bursts are allowed for any target.
2. Scoring criteria: 3 points for 1st burst hits, 2 points for 2nd burst hits, 1 point for 3rd burst hits, minus one (-1) point if target is not hit within the first three bursts.
3. 24 points are required to achieve a passing score on Table IV. If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.

---

**MCSF-M203-1001:** Maintain an M203 grenade launcher.

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle with a mounted M203 Grenade Launcher, cleaning gear, and lubricant

**STANDARD:** To ensure the weapon is complete, clean, and serviceable.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Clear the rifle.
2. Clear the M203 grenade launcher.
3. Disassemble the grenade launcher.
4. Clean the grenade launcher.
5. Inspect the grenade launcher.
6. Lubricate the grenade launcher.
7. Assemble the grenade launcher.
8. Conduct a function check.



**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 07700B-10 Operator's Manual, 40mm Grenade Launcher, M203 (Ch 1&2)
2. TM 3-22.31 40mm Grenade Launcher, M203

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.

---

**MCSF-M203-1002:** Perform weapons handling procedures for the M203 grenade launcher.

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle with a mounted M203 grenade launcher and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** Without endangering personnel or equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Clear the weapon.
2. Load the weapon.
3. Unload the weapon.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 07700B-10 Operator's Manual, 40mm Grenade Launcher, M203 (Ch 1&2)
2. TM 3-22.31 40mm Grenade Launcher, M203

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	1 per weapon

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event can be trained to standard through use of dummy round.
  2. The term weapon in the performance steps refers to both the service rifle and the grenade launcher.
-

**MCSF-M203-1003:** Perform misfire procedures for an M203 grenade launcher

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle with a mounted M203 grenade launcher that fails to fire and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To return the weapon to service.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Announce misfire and keep the muzzle on target for 30 seconds.
2. Unload the round and catch it.
3. If the primer is dented, store the round a safe distance away from serviceable ammunition.
4. If the primer is not dented, reload and attempt to fire.
5. If the weapon fails to fire, perform remedial action.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.31 40-mm Grenade Launcher, M203
2. TM 07700B-10 Operator's Manual, 40mm Grenade Launcher, M203 (Ch 1&2)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	1 per weapon

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. This task may be trained to standard through use of dummy round.

---

**MCSF-M203-1004:** Zero a M203 grenade launcher.

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a grenade launcher, ammunition, and a target at 200 meters, while wearing a fighting load

**STANDARD:** To ensure round impacts within 5 meters of the target.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify a target at 200 meters.
2. Set sights.

3. Engage a target from a supported prone position.
4. Adjust windage and elevation as needed.
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 as necessary.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.31 40-mm Grenade Launcher, M203
2. MCIP 8-10B.9i M16A4 Rifleman's Suite
3. TM 07700B-10 Operator's Manual, 40mm Grenade Launcher, M203 (Ch 1&2)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	3 per weapon
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night) XM1110	7 per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17610 Grenade Launcher Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Must be fired in a sensitive fuze impact area.
2. The standard can be accomplished with the leaf sight or optical device.

---

**MCSF-M203-1005:** Engage targets with a grenade launcher

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                    **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a grenade launcher, ammunition, and targets at unknown distances, while wearing a fighting load

**STANDARD:** To place 2 of 3 rounds within a 15 meter (ECR) radius of the target.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify a target.
2. Estimate range..
3. Set sights.
4. Fire from a supported position.
5. Employ alternate aiming point as required.
6. Assess effects.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.31 40-mm Grenade Launcher, M203
2. TM 07700B-10 Operator's Manual, 40mm Grenade Launcher, M203 (Ch 1&2)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Partial	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	0.25	N

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	3 per Marine
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night) XM1110	18 per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17610 Grenade Launcher Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. B564 40mm HEDP must be fired in a sensitive-fuze impact area.
2. The standard can be accomplished with the leaf sight or optical device.

---

**MCSF-M27-1001:** Maintain an Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR).

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Automatic Rifleman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR) and cleaning gear.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the weapon is complete, clean, and serviceable.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure the weapon is in Condition (4).
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Clean the weapon.
4. Assemble the weapon.
5. Perform a function check.

**REFERENCES:** TM 11810A-OR Operator's Manual for M27 Infantry Automatic Rifle

---

**MCSF-M27-1002:** Perform corrective action with an Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR).

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Automatic Rifleman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR) that has stopped firing and ammunition.

**STANDARD:** To return the weapon to operation.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Perform Immediate Action.
2. Continue firing.
3. If weapon fails to fire, perform remedial action.
4. Disassemble the weapon and examine the weapon and ammunition to determine the cause of the stoppage.
5. If both immediate and remedial action does not correct the problem, clear weapon of ammunition and evacuate weapon to a higher maintenance level.

**REFERENCES:** TM 11810A-OR Operator's Manual for M27 Infantry Automatic Rifle

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A060 Cartridge, 5.56mm Dummy M199	5 per Marine

---

**MCSF-M27-1003:** Zero a Squad Day Optic (SDO) to an Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR).

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Automatic Rifleman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR), sling, Squad Day Optic (SDO), individual field equipment, three (3) magazines, ammunition, and a target.

**STANDARD:** To achieve Point of Aim (POA) equals Point of Impact (POI) at 100 meters.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Mount the SDO to the IAR.
2. Establish a stable firing position.
3. Place weapon in Condition (1).
4. Fire a 5 round shot group.
5. Identify the center of shot group.
6. Make required SDO adjustments.
7. Repeat steps 4 thru 6.
8. Fire a 5 round confirmation group.
9. To zero the RMR, adjust POA/POI to the top edge of the 9 MOA dot at 100m.
10. Fire a 5 round shot group.
11. Make required RMR adjustments.
12. Repeat steps 9 thru 11.
13. Fire a 5 round confirmation group.

**REFERENCES:** TM 11758A-OR SDO Operator's Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	30 per Marine

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** 1. 100 meter range required to train this task to standard.

---

**MCSF-M27-1004:** BZO the Back Up Iron Sight (BUIS) to an Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR).

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Automatic Rifleman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR), Back Up Iron Sight (BUIS), individual field equipment, sling, magazines, ammunition, and a target.

**STANDARD:** To achieve Point of Aim (POA) equals Point of Impact (POI) at 300 meters.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Set the (BUIS) at initial sight setting for a true zero.
2. Establish a stable firing position.
3. Place weapon in Condition (1).
4. Fire a 5 round shot group.
5. Identify the center of shot group.
6. Make required sight adjustments.

7. Fire a second shot group. (Repeat steps 4 thru 7)
8. Fire a third shot group to confirm.
9. Record zero.

**REFERENCES:** MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	15 per Marine

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Zeroing iterations will be done with 15 rounds fired in three groups of 5 rounds. To short range zero an M27, rotate the elevation dial knob to align the number 3 (for 300m) to the witness mark on the left side of the rear sight base. Once short range zeroing is complete, confirm and refine zero at 300m. From 100m, impacts will be approximately 5 high. From 300m POA=POI. When zeroed, fold the sight down and install primary optical sight.

---

**MCSF-M27-1005:** Execute the Infantry Automatic Rifle Known Distance Course of Fire. (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Automatic Rifleman

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR) with Squad Day Optic (SDO), Back Up Iron Sight (BUIS), individual field equipment, sling, magazines, ammunition, and known distance targets.

**STANDARD:** By achieving a minimum score of 30 points out of a possible 45.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make a Condition 1 weapon at the Starting Point.
2. Familiarization stage: Engage targets with sixty rounds using five round bursts from the standing, kneeling, and prone positions.
3. Execute Stage 1, engage two targets at 300 meters in semi-auto using the supported prone position.
4. Execute Stage 1, engage two to four targets at 100 meters in full-auto using the supported prone position.
5. Execute Stage 2, engage two targets at 250 meters in semi-auto using the supported kneeling position.
6. Execute Stage 2, engage two to four targets at 125 meters in full-auto using the supported kneeling position.

7. Execute Stage 2, engage two to four targets at 75 meters in full-auto using the supported kneeling position.
8. Execute Stage 3, engage two to four targets at 50 meters in full-auto using the supported standing position.
9. Execute Stage 3, engage two to four targets at 75 meters in full-auto using the supported standing position.
10. Execute Stage 3, engage two to four targets at 100 meters in full-auto using the supported standing position.
11. Assume the supported prone position and engage two targets at 200 meters in semi-auto.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 11758A-OR SDO Operator's Manual
2. TM 11810A-OR Operator's Manual for M27 Infantry Automatic Rifle

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	1	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	225 per Marine

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

This task should be executed with a prequalification and qualification course of fire.

1. Target exposure times are no more than 10 seconds each.
2. Ammo is provided to support 5 rounds a target during semi-auto fire and 15 rounds a target during full-auto fire. (three 5 round burst)
3. No more than three bursts are allowed on any target.
4. Full-Auto scoring is as follows: 3 points for first burst hits, 2 points for second burst hits, 1 point for third burst hits.
5. Semi-Auto scoring is as follows: 3 points for three hits, 2 points for two hits, 1 point for one hit.
6. There is 25 meters of movement between each: Starting Point, Firing Point 1, Firing Point 2, and Firing Point 3.

---

**MCSF-M27-1006:** Execute the Infantry Automatic Rifle Unknown Distance Day Course of Fire. (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Automatic Rifleman



**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR) with Squad Day Optic (SDO), Back Up Iron Sight (BUIS), individual field equipment, sling, magazines, ammunition, and unknown distance targets.

**STANDARD:** By achieving a minimum score of 30 points out of a possible 45.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make a Condition 1 weapon at the Starting Point.
2. Move 25 meters from the Starting Point to Firing Point 1.
3. Execute Stage 1, engage two targets at 250 to 300 meters in semi-auto using the supported prone position.
4. Execute Stage 1, engage two to four targets at 50 to 100 meters in full-auto using the supported prone position.
5. Move 25 meters from Firing Point 1 to Firing Point 2 and assume the supported kneeling position.
6. Execute Stage 2, engage two targets at 200 to 250 meters in semi-auto using the supported kneeling position.
7. Execute Stage 2, engage two to four targets at 100 to 125 meters in full-auto using the supported kneeling position.
8. Execute Stage 2, engage two to four targets at 50 to 75 meters in full-auto using the supported kneeling position.
9. Move 25 meters from Firing Point 2 to Firing Point 3 and assume the supported standing position.
10. Execute Stage 3, engage two to four targets at 25 to 50 meters in full-auto using the supported standing position.
11. Execute Stage 3, engage two to four targets at 50 to 75 meters in full-auto using the supported standing position.
12. Execute Stage 3, engage two to four targets at 75 to 100 meters in full-auto using the supported standing position.
13. Assume the supported prone position and engage two targets at 250 to 300 meters in semi-auto.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 11758A-OR SDO Operator's Manual
2. TM 11810A-OR Operator's Manual for M27 Infantry Automatic Rifle

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	1	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	165 per Marine

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

This task should be executed with a prequalification and qualification course of fire.

1. Target exposure times are no more than 10 seconds each.
2. Ammo is provided to support 5 rounds a target during semi-auto fire and 15 rounds a target during full-auto fire. (three 5 round burst)
3. No more than three bursts are allowed on any target.
4. Full-Auto scoring is as follows: 3 points for first burst hits, 2 points for second burst hits, 1 point for third burst hits.
5. Semi-Auto scoring is as follows: 3 points for three hits, 2 points for two hits, 1 point for one hit.
6. There is 25 meters of movement between each: Starting Point, Firing Point 1, Firing Point 2, and Firing Point 3.

---

**MCSF-MMG-1001:** Perform operator maintenance for an M240B medium machine gun and associated components

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an SL-3 complete M240B medium machine gun, tripod, vehicle mount components, authorized cleaning gear, and lubricants

**STANDARD:** To ensure the weapon and components are operational.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure the weapon is in condition 4.
2. Disassemble the M240B medium machine gun.
3. Clean the M240B medium machine gun.
4. Inspect the M240B medium machine gun.
5. Lube the M240B medium machine gun.
6. Assemble the M240B medium machine gun.
7. Perform a function check on the M240B medium machine gun.
8. Clean the tripod.
9. Inspect the tripod.
10. Lubricate the tripod.
11. Clean the M240B SL-3 components.
12. Inspect the M240B SL-3 components.
13. Lubricate the M240B SL-3 components.
14. Clean the vehicle mount components.
15. Inspect the vehicle mount components.
16. Lubricate the vehicle mount components.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
2. TM 1005-OR Technical Manual, Machinegun Mounts
3. TM 11491A-OI Organizational and Intermediate Maintenance Manual w/ Repair Parts List (RPL), M35 Medium Machine Gun Vehicle Mount
4. TM 11792A-OI Machine Gun Day Optic, SU-260/P

**MCSF-MMG-1002:** Operate an M240B medium machinegun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**GRADES:** PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an SL-3 complete M240B medium machinegun, crew, fire command, and 12 rounds of ammunition, while wearing a fighting load

**STANDARD:** To engage targets in accordance with the fire command.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure the weapon is in condition 4.
2. Load the weapon using the cover raised.
3. Unload the weapon.
4. Load the weapon with the cover closed.
5. Change barrels.
6. Unload the weapon.
7. Make a condition 4 weapon.

**REFERENCES:** TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B (Army TM 9-1005-313-10) Operator's Manual for Machine Gun, 7.62mm, M240

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A135 Cartridge, 7.62mm Dummy M63	12 rounds per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. If a barrel is not within 2 to 7 clicks, turn into the armory for repair.
2. Consider hot or cold barrel procedures when changing barrels.

---

**MCSF-MMG-1003:** Perform immediate action on an M240B medium machinegun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**GRADES:** PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a SL-3 complete M240B medium machinegun with an induced stoppage, ammunition, and while wearing the fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To return the weapon into action.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Announce "MISFIRE."
2. Wait 5 seconds for a possible hang fire.
3. Pull the bolt to the rear and watch for feeding and ejecting.
4. If the weapon feeds/ejects, attempt to fire.
5. If the weapon fails to fire again, repeat steps 1 through 4. (If the weapon continues to fail, move to step 6).
6. If the weapon does not feed or eject, determine if the barrel is hot or cold. (If hot, place weapon on safe and wait 15 minutes). Then perform remedial action.

**REFERENCES:** TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B (Army TM 9-1005-313-10) Operator's Manual for Machine Gun, 7.62mm, M240

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A135 Cartridge, 7.62mm Dummy M63	6 rounds per weapon

**EQUIPMENT:** 1. Appropriate tactical vehicle and machine gun mounts.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.

---

**MCSF-MMG-1004:** Perform remedial action on an M240B medium machinegun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**GRADES:** PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an SL-3 complete medium machinegun with a malfunction or stoppage not corrected by immediate action, crew, and 6 rounds of ammunition, while wearing a fighting load

**STANDARD:** To return the weapon into action.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make a Condition 4 weapon.
2. Disassemble and inspect the weapon and ammunition.
3. Assemble the weapon and perform a function check.
4. Return the weapon into action or report discrepancies for subsequent repair.

**REFERENCES:** TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B (Army TM 9-1005-313-10) Operator's Manual for Machine Gun, 7.62mm, M240

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A135 Cartridge, 7.62mm Dummy M63	6 rounds per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.

---

**MCSF-MMG-1005:** Zero a Machinegun Day Optic (MDO) to an M240B medium machinegun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**GRADES:** PFC, LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an SL-3 complete M240B medium machinegun, Machinegun Day Optic (MDO), crew, 20 rounds of ammunition, and a target at 100 or 300 meters, while wearing a fighting load

**STANDARD:** To achieve point of aim/point of impact.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Mount the MDO to the medium machinegun.
2. Select a suitable target downrange at 100 or 300 meters.

3. Manipulate the machinegun with MDO until the top edge of the center dot is centered on the target.
4. Fire 5 single rounds and observe the impacts.
5. Adjust the MDO (5 clicks equals 2 inches at 100 meters and 2 clicks equals 3 inches at 300 meters).
6. Fire 5 single rounds and observe the impacts.
7. Adjust the MDO (5 clicks equals 2 inches at 100 meters and 2 clicks equals 3 inches at 300 meters).
8. Fire burst of 5 rounds for confirmation.
9. Align Ruggedized Miniature Reticle (RMR) to the MDO reticle.
10. Fire five single rounds to observe impacts.
11. Adjust RMR. (One click equals one inch at 100 meters).
12. Repeat steps 10 and 11 until the RMR is zeroed.

**REFERENCES:** TM 11792A-OI Machine Gun Day Optic, SU-260/P

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	30 round per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. The MDO consist of two sights, the MDO and RMR. Both sights must be zeroed to accomplish this task.
2. Zero is conducted at the 100/300 meter line.
3. 15 rounds are used to confirm MDO. 15 rounds are used to confirm RMR.
4. Pre-zero may be conducted at 25/33 meters.
5. The MDO is zeroed to the primary barrel. Engaging targets using the spare barrel will require the use of an alternate aiming point.

---

**MCSF-MMG-1006:** Zero a medium machinegun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a medium machinegun, ammunition, and a target(s), while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To achieve point of aim/point of impact.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. De-link nine (9) single rounds and a belt of three (3) rounds.
2. Ensure the rear sight leaf is flipped down for zeroing. Set the sights at 500m (battlesight setting).
3. Put the gun in Condition 1.
4. Lay the gun on the first paster, ensuring that the sights are aligned and at 6 o'clock on the paster.
5. Fire 3 rounds, one round at a time, ensuring that the same 6 o'clock sight picture is regained on the paster between shots.
6. Put the gun in Condition 4.
7. Move downrange to observe the shot group and mark the center of the target.
8. Measure the lateral and vertical distance between the center of the shot group and the center of the aiming paster.
9. If the center of the shot group is in the center of the paster, the gun is zeroed.
10. If the center of the shot group is not in the center of the paster, adjust the front sight as needed.
11. After adjusting windage and elevation, lower the retaining strap, but do not lock it down until the BZO elevation is confirmed.
12. Put the gun in Condition 1.
13. Fire another 3-round shot group (one round at a time) at the same paster.
14. Put the gun in Condition 4.
15. Move back downrange to observe the shot group and make appropriate sight adjustments.
16. Put the gun in Condition 1.
17. Fire the last 3-round shot group (one round at a time) at the same paster.
18. Put the gun in Condition 4.
19. Move back downrange to observe the shot group and make final sight adjustments.
20. Put the gun in Condition 1.
21. Confirm the zero by firing a burst of 3 rounds at the second paster.
22. Once the zero is confirmed, ensure the front sight assembly is snug laterally, and then lock the front sight blade retaining strap down into its detent.
23. Repeat this procedure for the spare barrel.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Crew-Served Machine Guns
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	24 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17510 Basic 10M-25M Firing Range (Zero)  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. The BZO established in this task should be used for Gunnery Table I (0331-MMG-1106). If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.

---

**MCSF-MMG-1007:** Field zero a medium machinegun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a medium machinegun, ammunition, and a target at 500 meters, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To achieve point of aim/point of impact.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a suitable target downrange, preferably at battlesight range - 500 meters.
2. Estimate the range to target.
3. Set the rear sight elevation to the estimated range, and lay the gun on target (sights at 6 o'clock to the target).
4. Fire a 6-round burst while the team leader observes the impacts.
5. Make corrections to the gun by manipulating the T&E until the beaten zone is adjusted onto target.
6. Once the impacts are on target, the gunner maintains his position, ensuring that the lay of the gun remains the same while sight adjustments are made - windage first, and then elevation.
7. Use the front sight adjusting tool to unlock the front sight retaining strap and rotate it upwards.
8. Adjust for windage and elevation.
9. Once elevation is correct, rotate the retaining strap back down , but do not lock it until BZO is confirmed.
10. Fire a 6-round burst for confirmation. If the burst is not on target, the sight adjustment process should be repeated until the beaten zone impacts the target.
11. Once the zero of the primary barrel is confirmed, change barrels and follow the same procedure for field zeroing the spare barrel.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Crew-Served Machine Guns
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
Al31 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	48 per



**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.

---

**MCSF-MMG-1008:** Zero a Night Aiming Device (NAD) for a medium machinegun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a medium machinegun, ammunition, a night aiming device, and a target at 500 meters.

**STANDARD:** To achieve point of aim/point of impact.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a suitable target downrange, preferably at 500 meters.
2. Ensure that both the rail grabber and TPIAL have been securely tightened with a flat-tip screwdriver.
3. Ensure that the TPIAL has been preset to zero.
4. Turn the selector switch to Setting 3 (AIM - HI).
5. While looking through the NVD, press the cable switch button to activate the aiming beam.
6. Manipulate the gun until the aiming beam is centered on the target.
7. Fire a 6-round burst and observe the beaten zone.
8. Re-tighten the PEQ-2 and its mount with a screwdriver.
9. Re-lay the gun to move the impacts onto the target.
10. Repeat steps 6 through 8 above until the burst is on target.
11. Once the burst is on target, keep the gun in place and have an assistant make adjustments to move the aiming beam onto the target by adjusting windage first, then elevation.
12. Re-tighten both the rail grabber and TPIAL with a screwdriver.
13. Fire another 6-round burst and make any necessary adjustments to the aiming beam.
14. Remove the lens cap from the illuminator.
15. Turn the selector switch to Setting 5 (DUAL - HI/HI).
16. Rotate the focus knob toward the spot illumination setting until the illuminating beam is small enough to be centered through visual observation.
17. Manipulate the illuminating beam adjusters so that the aiming beam is centered in the middle of the illuminating beam.
18. Fire a final 6-round burst to confirm the field zero.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Crew-Served Machine Guns
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 10470A-12&P/1A Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual, Target Pointer Illuminator/Aiming Light, AN/PEQ-2A

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	30 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.

---

**MCSF-MMG-1009:** Zero the AN/PVS-17C for a medium machinegun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a medium machinegun, ammunition, a night optical device, and a target at 500 meters, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To achieve point of aim/point of impact.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a suitable target downrange, preferably at 500 meters.
2. Ensure the PVS-17 mount has been securely tightened to the rail with a flat-tip screwdriver.
3. Turn the PVS-17 on and adjust the reticle for brightness and focus.
4. Lay the gun on the target, with the reticle in the center of the target.
5. Fire a 6-round burst and observe the beaten zone.
6. Re-tighten the PVS-17 mount with a screwdriver.
7. Re-lay the gun to move the impacts onto the target.
8. Repeat steps 5 through 7 above until the burst is on target.
9. Once the burst is on target, keep the gun in place and have an assistant make adjustments to move the sight onto the target by adjusting windage first, then elevation.
10. Fire another 6-round burst and make any necessary adjustments to the reticle.
11. The PVS-17 is zeroed when the reticle is centered on the beaten zone.

12. Fire a final 6-round burst to confirm the field zero.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Crew-Served Machine Guns
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 10796-12&P Operators Manual for AN/PVS-17/17B/17C Miniature Night Sight

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	30 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.

---

**MCSF-MMG-1010:** Conduct the 12.7-meter Basic Course for the medium machinegun (Gunnery Table I)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a medium machinegun, ammunition, and basic machinegun targets at 12.7-meters, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** By achieving a minimum score of 70 points out of a possible 102.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare two (2) 6-round belts of ammunition.
2. Engage pasters in Bank 3-4 (one paster each) with one 6-round burst each.
3. Prepare a 30-round belt of ammunition.
4. Engage pasters in Bank 5-6 (5 pasters total) with one 6-round burst each, using the traverse and search mechanism for each subsequent burst.
5. Prepare a 48-round belt of ammunition.
6. Engage pasters in Bank 7-8 (8 pasters total) with one 6-round burst each, using the traverse and search mechanism as appropriate for each subsequent burst.
7. Prepare four (4) 6-round belts of ammunition.

8. In a time limit of 45 seconds, engage pasters in Bank 1-4 (4 pasters total) with one 6-round burst each. No manipulation of the T&E is required other than to obtain proper sight alignment and picture before firing the 6-round bursts.
9. Prepare a 30-round belt of ammunition.
10. In a time limit of 30 seconds, engage pasters in Bank 5-6 (5 pasters total) with one 6-round burst each, using the traverse and search mechanism for each subsequent burst.
11. Prepare a 48-round belt of ammunition.
12. In a time limit of 45 seconds, engage pasters in Bank 7-8 (8 targets total) with one 6-round burst each, using the traverse and search mechanism as appropriate for each subsequent burst.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Crew-Served Machine Guns
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	192 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17510 Basic 10M-25M Firing Range (Zero)  
Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Total possible score for Table I is 102 points, with a minimum of 70 points for a passing score.
  2. Only rounds that impact on or within the line of the paster will be scored.
  3. Each hit is scored as one point.
  4. Only 6 rounds per paster will be scored, for a total score of 6 points per paster.
  5. Table I score constitutes qualification for the medium machinegun gunner assigned to Nuclear Weapons Security (NWS) Battalions only. For Fleet Antiterrorism Security Teams Table II (Multiple Engagement Course) must also be fired, and the two scores added together in order to achieve a qualification score. NWS Battalions may train this task to standard with use of the Indoor Simulated Marksmanship Trainer (ISMT). If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.
-

**MCSF-MMG-1011:** Conduct the Multiple Engagement Course for the medium machinegun (Gunnery Table II)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a medium machinegun, ammunition, double E-silhouette or stationary vehicle targets from 400 to 800 meters, and CBRN PPE, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** By achieving a minimum score of 21 points out of a possible 63.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare a belt of 252 rounds of ammunition.
2. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a double-E silhouette target at 500 meters.
3. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a double-E silhouette target at 400 meters.
4. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a double-E silhouette target at 700 meters.
5. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a stationary vehicle silhouette target at 800 meters.
6. In a time limit of 35 seconds, engage multiple double-E silhouette targets at 400 and 600 meters.
7. In a time limit of 35 seconds, engage multiple double-E silhouette targets at 500 and 700 meters.
8. In a time limit of 45 seconds, engage multiple double-E silhouette targets at 400, 600, and 700 meters.
9. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a stationary vehicle silhouette target at 800 meters.
10. In a time limit of 35 seconds, engage a double-E silhouette target at 500 meters and a stationary vehicle silhouette target at 800 meters.
11. While in a CBRN posture wearing a field protective mask w/hood and gloves, and in a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a double-E silhouette target at 500 meters.
12. While in a CBRN posture wearing a field protective mask w/hood and gloves, and in a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a double-E silhouette target at 600 meters.
13. While in a CBRN posture wearing a field protective mask w/hood and gloves, and in a time limit of 35 seconds, engage multiple double-E silhouette targets at 500 and 700 meters.
14. While in a CBRN posture wearing a field protective mask w/hood and gloves, and in a time limit of 45 seconds, engage multiple double-E silhouette targets at 400 and 600 meters, and a stationary vehicle silhouette target at 800 meters.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Crew-Served Machine Guns
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	252 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. All target engagements are conducted at the sustained rate using 6-8 round bursts.
  2. The ammunition belt of 252 rounds allows for an allotment of two 6-8 round bursts for each of the 21 targets. Any leftover bursts (resulting from first-burst hits) may be applied to a target that was not hit with the first or second burst, but no more than three bursts are allowed for any target.
  3. Scoring is as follows: 3 points for first burst hits, 2 points for second burst hits, 1 point for third burst hits, and minus one point (-1) for targets not hit.
- If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.
- 

**MCSF-MMG-1012:** Conduct the Range Card Course for the medium machinegun (Gunnery Table III)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a medium machinegun, ammunition, single- and double-E silhouette targets from 400 to 900 meters, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To record and fire targets in a defensive situation.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. With a 48-round belt of ammunition, register the Final Protective Line (FPL) using 12-round bursts.
2. Record the T&E data for the FPL on the range card.
3. With a 48-round belt of ammunition, register the two double-E silhouette targets (one at 400 and one at 600 meters), and the two 4-silhouette target banks (one at 800 and one at 900 meters).
4. Record the T&E data for the point targets on the range card.
5. With a 24-round belt of ammunition, register the two linear targets; one shallow target at 500 meters, and one deep target centered at 900 meters.
6. Record the T&E data for the linear targets on the range card.
7. With a 12-round belt of ammunition, engage the two linear targets using T&E data from the range card.

8. With a 24-round belt of ammunition, engage the four point targets using T&E data from the range card.
9. With a 12-round belt of ammunition, fire the final protective line using T&E data from the range card in a single burst.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Crew-Served Machine Guns
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	168 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Performance steps 1-6 are for the registration of targets and the preparation of the range card.
  2. Performance steps 7-9 are engagement and are scored as follows: 1 point for each target hit, with a total possible of 7 points.
  3. When firing the FPL, the burst must achieve grazing fire, as evidenced by the beaten zone striking a reference point determined during registration.
  4. A passing score on this gunnery table is 5 out of 7.
- If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task. Nuclear Weapons Security (NWS) Battalions are not required to qualify on this task.

---

**MCSF-MMG-1013:** Conduct the Night Vision Device (NVD) Course for the medium machinegun (Gunnery Table IV)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a medium machinegun, ammunition, night vision device(s), and double-E and stationary vehicle silhouette targets from 400 to 800 meters, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To engage targets in a non-illuminated environment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare a belt of 144 rounds.
2. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a double-E silhouette target at 500 meters.
3. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a double-E silhouette target at 400 meters.
4. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a double-E silhouette target at 700 meters.
5. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a stationary vehicle silhouette target at 800 meters.
6. In a time limit of 35 seconds, engage multiple double-E silhouette targets at 400 and 600 meters.
7. In a time limit of 35 seconds, engage multiple double-E silhouette targets at 500 and 700 meters.
8. In a time limit of 45 seconds, engage multiple double-E silhouette targets at 400, 600, and 700 meters.
9. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a stationary vehicle silhouette target at 800 meters.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Crew-Served Machine Guns
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	144 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. The ammunition load allows for an allotment of two 6-round bursts for each of the 12 targets. Any leftover bursts (resulting from a first-burst hit) may be applied to a target that was not hit with the first or second burst, but no more than three bursts are allowed for any target.
  2. Scoring criteria: 3 points for 1st burst hits, 2 points for 2nd burst hits, 1 point for 3rd burst hits, minus one (-1) point if target is not hit within the first three bursts.
  3. 24 points are required to achieve a passing score on Table IV. If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.
-



**MCSF-MMG-1014:** Conduct the 12.7-meter Bipod Course for the medium machinegun (Gunnery Table (V))

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a medium machinegun, ammunition, basic machinegun targets at 12.7 meters, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To achieve hits on at least 4 of the 6 targets presented.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare a belt of 36 rounds of ammunition.
2. Fire a 6-round burst at scoring space 3 on the target.
3. Fire a 6-round burst at scoring space 4 on the target.
4. Fire a 6-round burst at scoring space 5 on the target.
5. Fire a 6-round burst at scoring space 6 on the target.
6. Fire a 6-round burst at scoring space 7 on the target.
7. Fire a 6-round burst at scoring space 8 on the target.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Crew-Served Machine Guns
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	36 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17510 Basic 10M-25M Firing Range (Zero)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. On the Basic Machinegun Target, scoring spaces 1 and 2 are used for zeroing, spaces 3 through 8 are used during the familiarization course.
  2. One point is awarded for each scoring space hit.
  3. A minimum score of 4 out of 6 must be achieved to pass Gunnery Table V and progress on to Gunnery Table VI.
- If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.
- Nuclear Weapons Security (NWS) Battalions are not required to qualify on this task.
-

**MCSF-MMG-1015:** Conduct the Bipod Multiple Engagement Course for the medium machinegun (Gunnery Table VI)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a medium machinegun, ammunition, double E-silhouette or stationary vehicle targets from 100 to 400 meters, and CBRN PPE, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** By achieving a minimum score of 22 points out of a possible 33.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare a 132-round belt of ammunition.
2. In a time limit of 5 seconds, engage a single-E silhouette target at 200 meters.
3. In a time limit of 10 seconds, engage a double-E silhouette target at 400 meters.
4. In a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a single-E silhouette target at 200 meters and a double-E silhouette target at 400 meters.
5. In at time limit of 25 seconds, engage multiple single-E silhouette targets at 100 and 200 meters, and a double-E silhouette target at 400 meters.
6. While in a CBRN posture wearing a field protective mask w/hood and gloves, and in a time limit of 10 seconds, engage a single-E silhouette target at 100 meters.
7. While in a CBRN posture wearing a field protective mask w/hood and gloves, and in a time limit of 15 seconds, engage a double-E silhouette target at 300 meters.
8. While in a CBRN posture wearing a field protective mask w/hood and gloves, and in a time limit of 20 seconds, engage a single-E silhouette target at 100 meters and a double-E silhouette target at 300 meters.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Crew-Served Machine Guns
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	132 per

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. All target engagements are conducted at the sustained rate using 6-8 round bursts.

2. The ammunition belt of 132 rounds allows for an allotment of two 6-8 round bursts for each of the 11 targets. Any leftover bursts (resulting from first-burst hits) may be applied to a target that was not hit with the first or second burst, but no more than three bursts are allowed for any target.

3. Scoring is as follows: 3 points for first burst hits, 2 points for second burst hits, 1 point for third burst hits, and minus one point (-1) for targets not hit.

4. A score of 22 points (out of a possible 33) is required to pass Table VI.

If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task. Nuclear Weapons Security (NWS) Battalions are not required to qualify on this task.

---

**MCSF-OPTS-1001:** Utilize limited visibility devices

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a period of limited visibility and a limited visibility device, while wearing a fighting load

**STANDARD:** To remain mobile and identify objects within the capabilities of the device employed.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect SL-3 components for accountability and serviceability.
2. Assemble/mount device.
3. Use controls and indicators.
4. Conduct movement around obstacles.
5. Troubleshoot device if required.
6. Disassemble/remove device.
7. Perform preventive maintenance.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 10091B/10092B-10/1 AN/PAS-13B(V)2 & 3 THERMAL SIGHT
2. TM 10271A-10/1A Operator's Manual Monocular Night Vision Devices (MNVD) AN/PVS-14
3. TM 10796-12&P Operators Manual for AN/PVS-17/17B/17C Miniature Night Sight

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** 1. Due to the changes/updates in optical equipment, this task is designed to use the latest available optics.

---

**MCSF-OPTS-1002:** Zero the AN/PAS-13D(V)2 or 3 for a machinegun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** MCSF Machine Gunner

**GRADES:** PFC, LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an SL-3 complete machinegun, 30 rounds of ammunition, an AN/PAS-13D(V)2 or 3, and a target at an appropriate range, while wearing the fighting load

**STANDARD:** To achieve point of aim/point of impact.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a suitable target downrange at an appropriate range.
2. Mount the AN/PAS-13D onto the machinegun.
3. Lay the gun on the target so that the zeroing aim point is on the center mass of the target.
4. Fire a 6-round burst and observe the beaten zone.
5. Manipulate the gun to move the impacts onto the target.
6. Repeat steps 4 through 5 until the bursts are on target.
7. Once the burst is on target, keep the gun in place and have a team member adjust the reticle to move the zeroing aim point onto the target.
8. Fire a confirmation 6-round burst.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. TM 10091C/10092C-OR/1 AN/PAS-13D(V)2 & 3 THERMAL SIGHT
3. TM 10091C-OR AN/PAS-13D V2 MWTs

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62	30 rounds per
Linked	Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20	30 rounds per
Linked	Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event will be used to zero the thermal weapon sight for the M249, M240B, M2, and the MK-19.
2. Utilize LBS prior to live fire.
3. Targeting System needs to produce a heat signature.

**MCSF-RFL-1001:** Perform weapons handling procedures

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle/Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR), sling, magazines, individual equipment, and ammunition.

**STANDARD:** In accordance with MCRP 3-01A.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Demonstrate understanding of the four safety rules.
2. Demonstrate assembly and adjustment of the Common Weapon Sling.
3. Demonstrate the four Weapon Carries.
4. Demonstrate filling a magazine.
5. Take a weapon from condition 4 to condition 1.
6. Take a weapon from condition 1 to condition 4.
7. Perform reloads (speed, tactical).
8. Demonstrate Corrective Action for the four common stoppages.

**REFERENCES:** MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A060 Cartridge, 5.56mm Dummy M199	5 round per Marine

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event is trained and evaluated by a Combat Marksmanship Trainer.

---

**MCSF-RFL-1002:** Perform weapon maintenance

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle/Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR), sling, and cleaning gear.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the weapon is complete, clean, and serviceable in accordance with TM 05538/10012-10A/1 Operator's Manual for Rifle, M16A2, A4 Rifle/M4, M4A1 Carbine (Nov 2004) or TM 11810A-OR Operator's Manual for M27 Infantry Automatic Rifle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure the weapon is in Condition (4).
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Clean the weapon.
4. Lubricate the weapon.
5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Perform a user's serviceability inspection.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
  2. TM 05538/10012-10A/1 Operator's Manual for Rifle, M16A2, A4 Rifle/M4, M4A1 Carbine (Nov 2004)
  3. TM 11810A-OR Operator's Manual for M27 Infantry Automatic Rifle
- 

**MCSF-RFL-1003:** Zero the weapon

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle/Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR) with primary aiming device, individual field equipment, sling, magazines, ammunition, and a target.

**STANDARD:** To achieve 3 out of 5 shots within a 4 minute of angle group at a specific range.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Mount the sight to rifle.
2. Establish a pre-zero sight setting.
3. Assume a stable firing position.
4. Place the weapon in Condition (1).
5. Fire a 5 round shot group.
6. Identify the center of the shot group.
7. Determine required sight adjustments.
8. Make required sight adjustments.
9. (Repeat steps 4 thru 8).
10. Fire a third shot group for confirmation of zero.

**REFERENCES:** MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	15 round per Marine

**EQUIPMENT:** This event can be trained/augmented through the use of a Small Arms Collimator (SAC).

---

**MCSF-RFL-1004:** Demonstrate basic rifle marksmanship skills

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle/ Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR) with primary aiming device, individual field equipment, sling, magazines, data book, ammunition, and stationary targets at mid and long ranges.

**STANDARD:** To achieve mastery during execution of Table 1/1A during Entry-Level (ELR) and Annual Rifle Training (ART).

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assume stable firing positions (sitting, kneeling, standing and prone).
2. Acquire optimal eye relief.
3. Determine the effects of weather.
4. Apply appropriate hold.
5. Confirm Sight Alignment/Sight Picture.
6. Apply breath control.
7. Apply trigger control.
8. Engage target with single shots.
9. Engage target with multiple shots.
10. Apply follow through.
11. Maintain a data book.
12. Analyze shot placement.

**REFERENCES:** MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	1	N

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	245 round per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17120, Marksmanship Skills Training Simulator.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Skill development of this task will incorporate dry practice, live fire training and simulation using a Marksmanship Skills Training Simulator. To achieve the standard this task is required to be evaluated during live fire aboard a Known Distance Range with 100, 200, 300, and 500 meter range capability. Training executed aboard ranges built in yard distances will convert scores to a metric range equivalent as per MCO 3574.2\_.

---

**MCSF-RFL-1005:** Demonstrate basic combat rifle marksmanship

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle/ Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR) with primary aiming device, fighting load, sling, magazines, ammunition, and threat targets at short, mid and long range.

**STANDARD:** To achieve mastery during execution of Combat Marksmanship Table 2 during Entry-Level (ELR) and Annual Rifle Training (ART).

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify the threat.
2. Present the weapon to a threat while assuming combat shooting positions: standing, kneeling, and prone.
3. Determine Range.
4. Determine Hold.
5. Engage a threat using a Precision Shot, Controlled Pair, and Failure to stop.
6. Manage recoil.
7. Search and assess.
8. Maintain the weapon in Condition 1.

**REFERENCES:** MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	0.50	N



**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17120, Marksmanship Skills Training Simulator.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Skill development of this task will incorporate dry practice, live fire training and simulation using a Marksmanship Skills Training Simulator. To achieve the standard this task is required to be evaluated during live fire aboard a Known Distance Range with 25, 50, 100, 200, 300, and 500 meter range capability. Training executed aboard ranges built in yard distances will convert scores to a metric range equivalent as per MCO 3574.2\_.

---

**MCSF-RFL-1006:** Zero the night aiming device

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle/ Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR), sling, Mini-Integrated Pointer Illuminator Module (MIPIM), night vision device, individual field equipment, magazines, ammunition, a target and a dark environment.

**STANDARD:** To achieve Point of Impact (POI) on Point of Aim (POA) at a specific range.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Mount the (MIPIM) to the service rifle/Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR).
2. Rotate the Mode Selector to on position.
3. Activate the Aim Laser in continuous mod.
4. Adjust the laser to align with the desired point of aim within the optic, at a specific range (co-witness).
5. Mark the designated laser aim point and designated strike zone on the target.
6. Direct the Aim Laser at the laser aim point.
7. Fire a 5-round shot group.
8. Identify the center of shot group.
9. Adjust the laser with respect to the shot group.
10. Continue steps 7-9 until center of shot group is adjusted into center of strike zone.
11. Adjust the illumination focus knob to the desired flood width.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
2. TM 10471A-12&P/1 Laser Boresight System

3. TM 11407A-OI Mini Integrated Pointer Illuminator Module (MIPIM) AN/PEQ-16A

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	15 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17510 Basic 10M-25M Firing Range (Zero)

**EQUIPMENT:** This event can be trained/augmented through the use of the following enablers: LIVE - TGTS, Laser Boresight (LBS), and Small Arms Collimator (SAC).

---

**MCSF-RFL-1007:** Engage mid to long range threats (day)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle/ Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR), with primary aiming device, fighting load, sling, magazines, ammunition, and threat targets between 26 and 500 meters.

**STANDARD:** To eliminate 60% of exposed threats, during execution of Combat Marksmanship Table 3.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify threat(s).
2. Prioritize threat(s).
3. Present the weapon to the target while assuming supported combat shooting positions: standing, kneeling, and prone.
4. Determine the range to the threat.
5. Compensate for the effects of weather.
6. Apply appropriate hold.
7. Apply engagement techniques (controlled pair, precision engagement).
8. Search and assess.
9. Maintain the weapon in Condition 1.

**REFERENCES:** MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	0.50	N

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	105 round per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17520 Automated Field Fire (AFF) Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17120, Marksmanship Skills Training Simulator.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Skill development of this task will incorporate dry practice, live fire training and simulation using a Marksmanship Skills Training Simulator. To achieve the standard this task is required to be evaluated during live fire aboard an automated, unknown distance range with 26 to 500 meter range capability. Threat targets will visually represent a threat and will be exposed only during prescribed engagements (as per MCO 3574.2\_).

---

**MCSF-RFL-1008:** Engage mid-range threats (night)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle/ Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR), with primary aiming device, Mini-Integrated Pointer Illuminator Module (MIPIM), night vision device, fighting load, magazines, ammunition, and threat targets between 26 and 200 meters.

**STANDARD:** To eliminate 50% of exposed threats during execution of Combat Marksmanship Table 4.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify threat(s).
2. Prioritize threat(s).
3. Present the weapon to the threat while assuming supported, combat shooting positions: standing, kneeling, and prone.
4. Aim the weapon using the IR Aim Laser and night vision device.
5. Apply engagement techniques (controlled pair, precision engagement).
6. Search and assess.
7. Maintain the weapon in Condition 1.

**REFERENCES:** MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	0.50	N

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	75 round per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17520 Automated Field Fire (AFF) Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17120, Marksmanship Skills Training Simulator.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Skill development of this task will incorporate dry practice, live fire training and simulation using a Marksmanship Skills Training Simulator. To achieve the standard this task is required to be evaluated during live fire aboard an unknown distance range with 26 to 200 meter range capability. Threat targets will visually represent a threat and will be exposed only during prescribed engagements (as per MCO 3574.2\_).

---

**MCSF-RFL-1009:** Engage short range threats (Day)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle/ Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR) with primary aiming device, fighting load, sling, magazines, ammunition, and threat targets from 5 to 25 meters.

**STANDARD:** To eliminate 80% of exposed threats during execution of Combat Marksmanship Table 5.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify threat(s).
2. Prioritize threat(s).

3. Present the weapon to the threat while assuming combat shooting positions: standing and kneeling.
4. Apply engagement techniques (controlled pair, hammered pair, failure to stop/ box drill).
5. Search and assess.
6. Maintain the weapon in Condition 1.

**REFERENCES:** MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	0.50	N

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	205 round per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17120, Marksmanship Skills Training Simulator.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Skill development of this task will incorporate dry practice, live fire training and simulation using a Marksmanship Skills Training Simulator. To achieve the standard this task is required to be evaluated during live fire aboard an automated target range with 5-25m meter range capability. Threat targets will visually represent a threat and will be exposed only during prescribed engagements. Fixed, ground mounted targets are authorized when automated turning targets are not available. Courses of fire and scoring procedures are within MCO 3574.2\_.

---

**MCSF-RFL-1010:** Engage short range threats (Night)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle/Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR), with primary aiming device, Mini-Integrated Pointer Illuminator Module (MIPIM), night vision device, fighting load, magazines, ammunition, and threat targets between 5 and 25 meters.

**STANDARD:** To eliminate 50% of exposed threats during execution of Combat Marksmanship Table 6.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify threat(s).
2. Prioritize threat(s).
3. Present the weapon to the threat while assuming combat shooting positions: standing and kneeling.
4. Aim the weapon using the IR Aim Laser and night vision device.
5. Apply engagement techniques (controlled pair, hammered pair, failure to stop/box drill).
6. Search and assess.
7. Maintain the weapon in Condition 1.

**REFERENCES:** MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	0.50	N

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	205 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17120, Marksmanship Skills Training Simulator.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Skill development of this task will incorporate dry practice, live fire training and simulation using a Marksmanship Skills Training Simulator. To achieve the standard this task is required to be evaluated during live fire aboard an automated target range with 5-25m meter range capability. Threat targets will visually represent a threat and will be exposed only during prescribed engagements. Fixed, ground mounted targets are authorized when automated turning targets are not available. Courses of fire and scoring procedures are within MCO 3574.2\_.

**MCSF-RFL-1011:** Engage moving threats

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a service rifle/Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR) with primary aiming device, fighting load, sling, magazines, ammunition, and moving targets from 25 to 150 meters.

**STANDARD:** To eliminate 60% of exposed threats through incapacitation.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify threat(s).
2. Prioritize threat(s).
3. Present the weapon to the threat while assuming combat shooting positions: kneeling and prone.
4. Determine lead.
5. Apply tracking or ambush method.
6. Apply engagement techniques (single shot or controlled burst).
7. Search and assess.
8. Maintain the weapon in Condition 1.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
2. MCWL. [www.mccll.quantico.usmc.mil](http://www.mccll.quantico.usmc.mil)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	0.50	N

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	192 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17520 Automated Field Fire (AFF) Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17120, Marksmanship Skills Training Simulator.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. 128 rounds are fired for training and 64 rounds are fired for evaluation.
2. Skill development of this task will incorporate dry practice, live fire training and simulation using a Marksmanship Skills Training Simulator. To achieve the standard this task is required to be performed during live fire training. Incapacitation is achieved by delivering two shots in the ten inch diameter thoracic cavity. Threat targets will visually represent a threat and will move laterally (perpendicular to the Rifleman) a distance of 10 meters at both jogging (5mph) and running speeds (10mph).

---

**MCSF-SHOT-1001:** Perform weapons handling procedures with the service shotgun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a service shotgun, with or without ammunition.

**STANDARD:** Without endangering personnel or equipment.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Apply the firearm safety rules.
2. Apply the weapons conditions.
3. Transport the shotgun.
4. Load the shotgun.
5. Make the shotgun ready.
6. Assume a carry.
7. Clear Stoppages.
8. Unload the shotgun.
9. Unload and show the shotgun clear.
10. Transfer the shotgun from one Marine to another.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCSFTCO BSG WPNS Drill Guide
2. TM 10698A-10/1 M1014, Joint Service Shotgun

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.

---

**MCSF-SHOT-1002:** Perform preventive maintenance on the service shotgun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT



**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a service shotgun, cleaning gear, and lubricants.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the weapon is clean, complete and serviceable.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle the shotgun safely.
2. Ensure the shotgun in condition four.
3. Disassemble the shotgun.
4. Inspect the shotgun.
5. Clean and lubricate the shotgun.
6. Reassemble the shotgun.
7. Perform a safety functions check.

**REFERENCES:** TM 10698A-10/1 M1014, Joint Service Shotgun

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task.

---

**MCSF-SHOT-1003:** Engage threats with the service shotgun (S/L)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Task should be used for M500/M1014 if applicable. Shoot known and unknown target engagement.

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a service shotgun, ammunition, and associated SL-3.

**STANDARD:** To neutralize threats.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Apply weapons conditions.
2. Detect threats.
3. Assume shooting positions.
4. Utilize cover as applicable.
5. Present the weapon.
6. Apply aiming techniques.
7. Engage threat/threats.
8. Engage moving threats if applicable.
9. Apply follow through.
10. Clear stoppages.
11. Search and assess.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCSFTCO BSG WPNS Drill Guide

2. TM 10698A-10/1 M1014, Joint Service Shotgun

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	1	Y

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A011 Cartridge, 12 Gauge #00 Buckshot M162	140 cartridges per Marine
A023 Cartridge, 12 Gauge 1 Ounce Slug Commercial	10 cartridges per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** ISMT

**MATERIAL:** TM-9-1005-338-13P (M500 Shotgun)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Ammunition for this task covers the Security Forces Day and Night Qualifications for both the M500 and the M1014.
2. Pattern shotgun as necessary.
3. If this equipment is not issued according to Tables of Organization/ Equipment (TO&E) or employed as a mission requirement, individuals are not required to execute this task

---

**MCSF-WPNS-1001:** Engage a target with an M67 fragmentation grenade

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an M67 fragmentation grenade and target, while wearing a fighting load.

**STANDARD:** To achieve impact within the effective casualty radius of the grenade.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Remove grenade from pouch.

2. Inspect grenade for defects.
3. Estimate range to target.
4. Prepare the grenade for throwing.
5. Assume grenade throwing position.
6. Throw the grenade and communicate "Frag Out."
7. Take cover.

**REFERENCES:** FM 23-30 Grenade

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	3 grenades per Marine
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228 w/ Conf Clip	3 fuzes per Marine
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67 w/ Conf Clip	1 grenades per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17810 Live Hand Grenade Range

**ADDITIONAL RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Grenade pit with stationary targets at 20 to 40 meters.

---

**MCSF-WPNS-1002:** Apply advanced marksmanship skills with the service pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary equipment, while stationary or moving, and potential threats inside or outside an objective

**STANDARD:** To achieve 80 percent hits in vital areas.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Apply weapons conditions.
2. Identify threats.
3. Maintain stable shooting platform.
4. Utilize cover as applicable.
5. Present the weapon.
6. Apply aiming techniques.
7. Engage threat (s) with appropriate shot delivery.
8. Engage moving targets if applicable.
9. Apply follow through.
10. Clear stoppages.
11. Search and assess.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
2. MCSF CQB HB MCSF Close Quarters Battle Handbook
3. TM 08993-OR/1 OPERATOR'S MANUAL PISTOL, SEMI AUTOMATIC, 9mm, M9

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	1	N

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	600 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**MCSF-WPNS-1003:** Apply advanced marksmanship skills with the service rifle.

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given all necessary equipment, while stationary or moving, and potential threats

**STANDARD:** To achieve 80 percent hits in vital areas.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Apply weapons conditions.
2. Identify Threat(s).
3. Maintain stable shooting platform.
4. Utilize cover as applicable.
5. Present the weapon.
6. Apply aiming techniques.
7. Engage threat(s) with appropriate shot delivery.
8. Apply follow through.
9. Clear stoppages.
10. Search and assess.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCSF Regt Close Quarters Battle Drill Guide
2. TM 05538/10012-OI Organizational and Intermediate Maintenance Manual with Repair Parts List (RPL) for M16A2, M16A4, M4, and M4A1 CQBW

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**SIMULATION EVALUATION:**

<u>SIMULATED</u>	<u>SUITABILITY</u>	<u>SIMULATOR</u>	<u>UNIT OF MEASURE</u>	<u>HOURS</u>	<u>PM</u>
Yes	S/L	ISMT	Marine Hours	1	N

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	1000 rounds per Marine
AA68 Cartridge, 5.56mm Short Range Training M862	1000 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17550 Rifle Known Distance (KD) Range  
Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

---

**MCSF-WPNS-1004:** Engage targets while transitioning from a rifle to pistol

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a service pistol, magazines, magazine pouch, ammunition, target, holster, service rifle and personal protective equipment (PPE),

**STANDARD:** To eliminate threats while achieving a passing score of 60.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Handle rifle and pistol IAW the four weapons safety rules.
2. Assume a combat shooting stance or carry with the rifle.
3. Identify a threat.
4. Identify a need to transition.
5. Transition to the pistol.
6. Present the pistol to a threat while assuming a firing position.
7. Engage threat (s) with appropriate shot delivery.
8. Conduct a speed or tactical reload as required.
9. Perform immediate or remedial action, as required.
10. Search and Assess.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3574.2\_ Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
2. MCRP 8-10B.3 Pistol Marksmanship

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	50 rounds per Marine
A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882	50 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17502 Non-Standard Small Arms Range  
Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range  
Facility Code 17572 Automated Combat Pistol/MP Firearms Qualification

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Load-bearing equipment is in accordance with billet and unit.
2. This task is performed as required by billet duties.
3. This task should incorporate dry practice.

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX A

ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

ACT - Accuracy Completeness Time Sequence  
ACTS - Assignment, Classification, and Travel Systems  
AIRS - Automated Inspection Reporting System  
AO - area of operations  
APTS - Advanced Presentation and Training Skills  
AR - Active Reserve  
ASTB-E - Aviation Selection Test Battery Series-E  
AT4C - Advanced Tool for Coaching  
BIC - Billet Information Code  
CAPT - Captain  
CAR - Commanders Attainment Report  
CBRN - Chemical Biological Radiological Nuclear  
CBT - Computer-Based Training  
CG - Commanding General  
CRP - command recruiting program  
CMC - Commandant of the Marine Corps  
CMR - Consolidated Memorandum Receipt  
CO - commanding officer  
COA - Course of Action  
CONPLAN - Contingency Plan  
CONUS - Continental United States  
COT - Consecutive Overseas Tours  
CPL - Corporal  
CRP - Combat Readiness Percentage  
CSR - Consolidated Strength Report  
CWO - Chief Warrant Officer  
DD - Department of Defense  
DEP - Delayed Entry Program  
DL - distance learning  
DoD - Department of Defense  
DoDFMR - Department of Defense financial management regulations  
DON - Department of the Navy  
DRRS - Defense Readiness Reporting System  
EAD - Extended Active Duty  
ECS - Effective Communication Skills  
ECFC - Enlisted Career Force Controls  
EFMP - Exceptional Family Member Program  
ENLPROM - Enlisted Promotions  
EPM - Enlistment Processing Manual  
FAI - Functional Area Inspection  
FLC - Formal Learning Center  
FMF - Fleet Marine Force  
FY - fiscal year  
GOV - Government Owned Vehicle  
GSA - Government Services Agency  
GYSGT - Gunnery Sergeant  
HOTAS - Hands-on Throttle and Stick  
HQMC - Headquarters, Marine Corps  
IAW - in accordance with  
IIADT - Incremental Initial Active Duty Training

IGMC - Inspector General of the Marine Corps  
IMI - Individual Multimedia Instruction  
IPOCT - In Place Consecutive Overseas Tours  
IRAM - Individual Records Administration Manual  
IRR - Individual Ready Reserve  
IRT - Itinerant Recruiting Trip  
1STLT - First Lieutenant  
JPIC - Joint Package Inspection Checklist  
LATMOV - lateral move  
LCPL - Lance Corporal  
LDO - Limited Duty Officer  
LOD - Line of Duty  
LOI - Letter of Instruction  
LSL - lump sum leave  
MARADMIN - Marine Administrative Message  
MAJ - Major  
MARCORPROMMAN - Marine Corps Promotion Manual  
MARCORSEPMAN - Marine Corps Separation and Retirement Manual  
MARFORRES - Marine Forces Reserve  
MASP - Military Academic Skills  
MC2 - Marine Corps Communication and Consulting  
MC3 - Marine Corps Communication, Coaching and Counseling  
MC4 - Marine Corps Communication, Consulting, Coaching, and Counseling  
MCC - Monitored Command Code  
MCOOB - Marine Corps Officer Opportunity Book  
MCEOB - Marine Corps Enlisted Opportunities Book  
MCI - Marine Corps Institute  
MCMP - Marine Corps Mentoring Program  
MCO - Marine Corps Order  
MCMEDS - Marine Corps Medical Entitlements Data System  
MCPS - Marine Corps Presentation Skills  
MCP3 - Marine Corps Performance, Programming and Philosophy  
MCRAMM - Marine Corps Reserve Administrative Management Manual  
MCRC - Marine Corps Recruiting Command  
MCRD - Marine Corps Recruit Depot  
MCRISS - Marine Corps Recruiting Information Support System  
MCRISS-PSRS - Marine Corps Recruiting Information Support System-Prior  
Service Recruiting Station  
MCRISS-PSRSS - Marine Corps Recruiting Information Support System-Prior  
Service Recruiting Substation  
MCRISS-RS - Marine Corps Recruiting Information Support System-Recruiting  
Station  
MCRISS-OSS - Marine Corps Recruiting Information Support System-Officer  
Selection Station  
MCTFSPRIM - Marine Corps Total Force Reporting Instructions Manual  
MCTIMS - Marine Corps Training Information Management System  
MCRD - Marine Corps Recruit Depot  
MCROB - Marine Corps Reserve Opportunity Book  
MCT - Marine Corps Task  
MCTL - Marine Corps Task List  
MECEP - Marine Corps Enlisted Commissioning Education Program  
MEPCOM - Military Entrance Processing Command  
MEPS - Military Entrance Processing Station  
MET - Mission Essential Task  
METL - Mission Essential Task List  
MGIB-R - Montgomery GI Bill-Reserve  
MGYSGT - Master Gunnery Sergeant



MIRS - USMEPCOM Integrated Resource System  
MISSO - Manpower Information Systems Support Officer  
MOJT - Managed On the Job Training  
MOL - Marine Online  
MOS - Military Occupational Specialty  
MSC - Major Subordinate Command  
MSGT - Master Sergeant  
MUD - Merkel Unit Designator  
NAMI - Naval Aerial Medical Institute  
NAVMC - Navy Marine Corps  
NIDT - Non-Instrumented Drug Test  
NMCI - Navy Marine Corps Communication Information  
NWA - new working applicant  
OCHF - Operations Chief  
OCM - Officer Commissioning Manual  
OCONUS - Outside the Continental United States  
OIC - Officer in Charge  
OPLAN - Operational Plan  
OPS - Operations  
OPFOR - operating forces  
OPNAVINST - Operational Navy Instruction  
OPSO - Operations Officer  
ORM - Operational Risk Management  
OSO - Officer Selection Officer  
OSS - Officer Selection Station  
OST - Officer Selection Team  
PAC - Prospect Applicant Card  
PADD - Projected Active duty Date  
PAR - Performance and Review  
PFC - Private First Class  
PSEP - Prior Service Enlistment Program  
PSR - Prior Service Recruiter  
PSRS - Prior Service Recruiting Station  
PSRSS - Prior Service Recruiting Substation  
PTAD - Permissive Temporary Additional Duty  
PVT - Private  
QC - quality control  
QSN - Quota Serial Number  
RAV - Retention Assist Visit  
RECLP - Reserve Enlisted Commissioning Program  
RELM - Reenlistment Extension Lateral Move  
RI - Recruiter Instructor  
ROEP - Reserve Option Enlistment Program  
RS - Recruiting Station  
RSCE - Recruiting Station Command Element  
RSS - Recruiting Substation  
RTF - recruiter training file  
RUC - Reporting Unit Code  
SAT - Systems Approach to Training  
SAV - staff assist visit  
SDA - Special Duty Assignment  
SECNAVINST - Secretary of the Navy Instruction  
SGT - Sergeant  
SGTMAJ - Sergeant Major  
SMB - SNCOIC Management Book  
SMCR - Select Marine Corps Reserve  
SME - subject matter expert

SMOS - Supplementary MOS  
SNCO - Staff Noncommissioned Officer  
SNCOIC - Staff Noncommissioned Officer in Charge  
SOS - Statement of Service  
SOP - Standing Operating Procedure  
SOU - Statement of Understanding  
S&R - Schedule and Results  
SRB - selective reenlistment bonus  
SRI - Systematic Recruiting Inspection  
SRIP - Selected Reserve Incentive Program  
SSGT - Staff Sergeant  
TECOM - Training and Education Command  
TIP - Training Input Plan  
TMS - Training Management System  
T&R - Training and Readiness  
T/O - Table of Organization  
UMIS - Unit Manpower Information Sheet  
UTM - Unit Training Management  
WO - Warrant Officer  
XO - Executive Officer

MCSF REG T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX B

TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

Terms in this glossary are subject to change as applicable orders and directives are revised. Terms established by Marine Corps orders or directives take precedence after definitions found in Joint Publication 1-02, DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms.

**A**

**After Action Review.** A professional discussion of training events conducted after all training to promote learning among training participants. The formality and scope increase with the command level and size of the training evolution. For longer exercises, they should be planned for at predetermined times during an exercise. The results of the AAR shall be recorded on an after action report and forwarded to higher headquarters. The commander and higher headquarters use the results of an AAR to reallocate resources, reprioritize their training plan, and plan for future training.

**Assessment.** An informal judgment of the unit's proficiency and resources made by a commander or trainer to gain insight into the unit's overall condition. It serves as the basis for the midrange plan. Commanders make frequent use of these determinations during the course of the combat readiness cycle in order to adjust, prioritize or modify training events and plans.

**C**

**Chaining.** A process that enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate collective events and individual events that support a specific collective event. For example, collective training events at the 4000-Level are directly supported by collective events at the 3000-Level. When a higher level event by its nature requires the completion of lower level events, they are "chained"; Sustainment credit is given for all lower level events chained to a higher event.

**Collective Event.** A clearly defined, discrete, and measurable activity, action, or event (i.e., task) that requires organized team or unit performance and leads to accomplishment of a mission or function. A collective task is derived from unit missions or higher-level collective tasks. Task accomplishment requires performance of procedures composed of supporting collective or individual tasks. A collective task describes the exact performance a group must perform in the field under actual operational conditions. The term "collective" does not necessarily infer that a unit accomplishes the event. A unit, such as a squad or platoon conducting an attack; may accomplish a collective event or, it may be accomplished by an individual to accomplish a unit mission, such as a battalion supply officer completing a reconciliation of the battalion's CMR. Thus, many collective events will have titles that are the same as individual events; however, the standard and condition will be different because the scope of the collective event is broader.

**Collective Training Standards (CTS).** Criteria that specify mission and functional area unit proficiency standards for combat, combat support, and combat service support units. They include tasks, conditions, standards, evaluator instruction, and key indicators. CTS are found within collective training events in T&R Manuals.

**Combat Readiness Cycle.** The combat readiness cycle depicts the relationships within the building block approach to training. The combat readiness cycle progresses from T&R Manual individual core skills training, to the accomplishment of collective training events, and finally, to a unit's participation in a contingency or actual combat. The combat readiness cycle demonstrates the relationship of core capabilities to unit combat readiness. Individual core skills training and the training of collective events lead to unit proficiency and the ability to accomplish the unit's stated mission.

**Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP).** The CRP is a quantitative numerical value used in calculating collective training readiness based on the E-Coded events that support the unit METL. CRP is a concise measure of unit training accomplishments. This numerical value is only a snapshot of training readiness at a specific time. As training is conducted, unit CRP will continuously change.

**Condition.** The condition describes the training situation or environment under which the training event or task will take place. Expands on the information in the title by identifying when, where and why the event or task will occur and what materials, personnel, equipment, environmental provisions, and safety constraints must be present to perform the event or task in a real-world environment. Commanders can modify the conditions of the event to best prepare their Marines to accomplish the assigned mission (e.g. in a desert environment; in a mountain environment; etc.).

**Core Competency.** Core competency is the comprehensive measure of a unit's ability to accomplish its assigned MET. It serves as the foundation of the T&R Program. Core competencies are those unit core capabilities and individual core skills that support the commander's METL and T/O mission statement. Individual competency is exhibited through demonstration of proficiency in specified core tasks and core plus tasks. Unit proficiency is measured through collective tasks.

**Core Capabilities.** Core capabilities are the essential functions a unit must be capable of performing during extended contingency/combat operations. Core unit capabilities are based upon mission essential tasks derived from operational plans; doctrine and established tactics; techniques and procedures.

**Core Plus Capabilities.** Core plus capabilities are advanced capabilities that are environment, mission, or theater specific. Core plus capabilities may entail high-risk, high-cost training for missions that are less likely to be assigned in combat.

**Core Plus Skills.** Core plus skills are those advanced skills that are environment, mission, rank, or billet specific. 2000-Level training is designed to make Marines proficient in core skills in a specific billet or at a specified rank at the Combat Ready level. 3000-8000-Level training produces combat leaders and fully qualified section members at the Combat Qualified level. Marines trained at the Combat Qualified level are those the

commanding officer feels are capable of accomplishing unit-level missions and of directing the actions of subordinates. Many core plus tasks are learned via MOJT, while others form the base for curriculum in career level MOS courses taught by the formal school.

#### D

**Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS).** A comprehensive readiness reporting system that evaluates readiness on the basis of the actual missions and capabilities assigned to the forces. It is a capabilities-based, adaptive, near real-time reporting system for the entire Department of Defense.

**Deferred Event.** A T&R event that a commanding officer may postpone when in his or her judgment, a lack of logistic support, ammo, ranges, or other training assets requires a temporary exemption. CRP cannot be accrued for deferred "E-Coded" events.

**Delinquent Event.** An event becomes delinquent when a unit exceeds the sustainment interval for that particular event. The individual or unit must update the delinquent event by first performing all prerequisite events. When the unit commander deems that performing all prerequisite is unattainable, then the delinquent event will be re-demonstrated under the supervision of the appropriate evaluation authority.

#### E

**E-Coded Event.** An "E-Coded" event is a collective T&R event that is a noted indicator of capability or, a noted collective skill that contributes to the unit's ability to perform the supported MET. As such, only "E-Coded" events are assigned a CRP value and used to calculate a unit's CRP.

**Evaluation.** Evaluation is a continuous process that occurs at all echelons, during every phase of training and can be both formal and informal. Evaluations ensure that Marines and units are capable of conducting their combat mission. Evaluation results are used to reallocate resources, reprioritize the training plan, and plan for future training.

**Event (Training).** 1) An event is a significant training occurrence that is identified, expanded and used as a building block and potential milestone for a unit's training. An event may include formal evaluations. 2) An event within the T&R Program can be an individual training evolution, a collective training evolution or both. Through T&R events, the unit commander ensures that individual Marines and the unit progress from a combat capable status to a Fully Combat Qualified (FCQ) status.

**Event Component.** The major procedures (i.e., actions) that must occur to perform a Collective Event to standard.

**Exercise Commander (EC).** The Commanding General, Marine Expeditionary Force or his appointee will fill this role, unless authority is delegated to the respective commander of the Division, Wing, or FSSG. Responsibilities and functions of the EC include: 1) designate unit(s) to be evaluated, 2) may designate an exercise director, 3) prescribe exercise objectives and T&R events to be evaluated, 4) coordinate with commands or agencies external to the Marine Corps and adjacent Marine Corps commands, when required.

**Exercise Director (ED).** Designated by the EC to prepare, conduct, and report all evaluation results. Responsibilities and functions of the ED include: 1) Publish a letter of instruction (LOI) that: delineates the T&R events to be evaluated, establishes timeframe of the exercise, lists responsibilities of various elements participating in the exercise, establishes safety requirements/guidelines, and lists coordinating instructions. 2) Designate the TEC and TEGC to operate as the central control agency for the exercise. 3) Assign evaluators, to include the senior evaluator, and ensure that those evaluators are properly trained. 4) Develop the general exercise scenario taking into account any objectives/events prescribed by the EC. 5) Arrange for all resources to include: training areas, airspace, aggressor forces, and other required support.

**M**

**Marine Corps Ground Training and Readiness (T&R) Program.** The T&R Program is the Marine Corps' primary tool for planning and conducting training, for planning and conducting training evaluation, and for assessing training readiness. The program will provide the commander with standardized programs of instruction for units within the ground combat, combat support, and combat service support communities. It consolidates the ITS, CTS, METL and other individual and unit training management tools. T&R is a program of standards that systematizes commonly accepted skills, is open to innovative change, and above all, tailors the training effort to the unit's mission. Further, T&R serves as a training guide and provides commanders an immediate assessment of unit combat readiness by assigning a CRP to key training events. In short, the T&R Program is a building block approach to training that maximizes flexibility and produces the best-trained Marines possible.

**Mission Essential Task(s) MET(s).** A MET is a collective task in which an organization must be proficient in order to accomplish an appropriate portion of its wartime mission(s). MET listings are the foundation for the T&R Manual; all events in the T&R Manual support a MET.

**Mission Essential Task List (METL).** Descriptive training document that provides units a clear, war fighting focused description of collective actions necessary to achieve wartime mission proficiency. The service-level METL, that which is used as the foundation of the T&R Manual, is developed using Marine Corps doctrine, operational plans, T/Os, UJTL, UNTL, and MCTL. For community based T&R Manuals, an occupational field METL is developed to focus the community's collective training standards. Commanders develop their unit METL from the service-level METL, operational plans, contingency plans, and SOPs.

**O**

**Operational Readiness (DOD, NATO).** OR is the capability of a unit/formation, ship, weapon system, or equipment to perform the missions or functions for which it is organized or designed. May be used in a general sense or to express a level or degree of readiness.

**P**

**Prerequisite Event.** Prerequisites are the academic training and/or T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the event.

**R**

**Readiness (DOD).** Readiness is the ability of U.S. military forces to fight and meet the demands of the national military strategy. Readiness is the synthesis of two distinct but interrelated levels: a) Unit readiness--The ability to provide capabilities required by combatant commanders to execute assigned missions. This is derived from the ability of each unit to deliver the outputs for which it was designed. b) Joint readiness--The combatant commander's ability to integrate and synchronize ready combat and support forces to execute assigned missions.

**S**

**Section Skill Tasks.** Section skills are those competencies directly related to unit functioning. They are group rather than individual in nature, and require participation by a section (S-1, S-2, S-3, etc).

**Simulation Training.** Simulators provide the additional capability to develop and hone core and core plus skills. Accordingly, the development of simulator training events for appropriate T&R syllabi can help maintain valuable combat resources while reducing training time and cost. Therefore, in cases where simulator fidelity and capabilities are such that simulator training closely matches that of actual training events, T&R Manual developers may include the option of using simulators to accomplish the training. CRP credit will be earned for E-Coded simulator events based on assessment of relative training event performance.

**Standard.** A standard is a statement that establishes criteria for how well a task or learning objective must be performed. The standard specifies how well, completely, or accurately a process must be performed or product produced. For higher-level collective events, it describes why the event is being done and the desired end-state of the event. Standards become more specific for lower-level events and outline the accuracy, time limits, sequencing, quality, product, process, restrictions, etc., that indicate the minimum acceptable level of performance required of the event. At a minimum, both collective and individual training standards consist of a task, the condition under which the task is to be performed, and the evaluation criteria that will be used to verify that the task has been performed to a satisfactory level.

**Sustainment Training.** Periodic retraining or demonstration of an event required maintaining the minimum acceptable level of proficiency or capability required to accomplish a training objective. Sustainment training goes beyond the entry-level and is designed to maintain or further develop proficiency in a given set of skills.

**Systems Approach to Training (SAT).** An orderly process for analyzing, designing, developing, implementing, and evaluating a unit's training program to ensure the unit, and the Marines of that unit acquire the knowledge and skills essential for the successful conduct of the unit's wartime missions.

**T**

**Training Task.** This describes a direct training activity that pertains to an individual Marine. A task is composed of 3 major components: a description of what is to be done, a condition, and a standard.

**Technical Exercise Controller (TEC).** The TEC is appointed by the ED, and usually comes from his staff or a subordinate command. The TEC is the senior evaluator within the TEGC and should be of equal or higher grade than the commander(s) of the unit(s) being evaluated. The TEC is responsible for ensuring that the evaluation is conducted following the instructions contained in this order and MCO 1553.3A. Specific T&R Manuals are used as the source for evaluation criteria.

**Tactical Exercise Control Group (TECG).** A TECG is formed to provide subject matter experts in the functional areas being evaluated. The benefit of establishing a permanent TECG is to have resident, dedicated evaluation authority experience, and knowledgeable in evaluation technique. The responsibilities and functions of the TECG include: 1) developing a detailed exercise scenario to include the objectives and events prescribed by the EC/ED in the exercise LOI; 2) conducting detailed evaluator training prior to the exercise; 3) coordinating and controlling role players and aggressors; 4) compiling the evaluation data submitted by the evaluators and submitting required results to the ED; 5) preparing and conducting a detailed exercise debrief for the evaluated unit(s).

**Training Plan.** Training document that outlines the general plan for the conduct of individual and collective training in an organization for specified periods of time.

## U

**Unit CRP.** Unit CRP is a percentage of the E-Coded collective events that support the unit METL accomplished by the unit. Unit CRP is the average of all MET CRP.

**Unit Evaluation.** All units in the Marine Corps must be evaluated, either formally or informally, to ensure they are capable of conducting their combat mission. Informal evaluations should take place during all training events. The timing of formal evaluations is critical and should, when appropriate, be directly related to the units' operational deployment cycle. Formal evaluations should take place after the unit has been staffed with the majority of its personnel, has had sufficient time to train to individual and collective standards, and early enough in the training cycle so there is sufficient time to correctly identified weaknesses prior to deployment. All combat units and units' task organized for combat require formal evaluations prior to operational deployments.

**Unit Training Management (UTM).** Unit training management is the use of the SAT and Marine Corps training principles in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit on its wartime mission. UTM governs the major peacetime training activity of the Marine Corps and applies to all echelons of the Total Force.

## W

**Waived Event.** An event that is waived by a commanding officer when in his or her judgment, previous experience or related performance satisfies the requirement of a particular event.